

GUIDE TO THE EAST SLAVONIC LANGUAGES

(Guide To The Slavonic Languages,
Third Edition, Revised And Expanded, Part 3)

by

R. G. A. de Bray

Fellow of the
Australian
Academy
of Humanities

1980

Slavica Publishers, Inc.

For a list of some other books from Slavica, see the last pages of this book. For a complete catalog with prices and ordering information, write to:
Slavica Publishers, Inc.
P.O. Box 14388
Columbus, Ohio 43214

Published with the financial assistance of the United Nations Educational, Scientific, and Cultural Organization (UNESCO). The opinions expressed in this book are those of the author, and not necessarily those of either the publisher or UNESCO.

ISBN: 0-89357-062-1.

Copyright © 1951 by J. M. Dent & Sons Ltd., London; revisions copyright © 1969 and 1980 by R. G. A. de Bray. All rights reserved.

426
5K

To the memory of
Robert Auty
Colleague, counsellor,
and friend

Printed in the United States of America by LithoCrafters, Inc., Chelsea, Michigan 48118.

Gerunds.....	80
Participles.....	81
Conjugation, examples.....	83
Irregular verbs.....	85
Verbs of going and conveying.....	88
TEXTS.....	90

CONTENTS

PUBLISHER'S NOTE.....	7
PREFACES.....	9
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS USED.....	13

INTRODUCTION

THE PURPOSE OF THIS BOOK.....	15
THE PLAN AND ARRANGEMENT OF THIS BOOK.....	16
THE METHOD OF USING THIS BOOK.....	18
THE DISTRIBUTION OF THE SLAVONIC LANGUAGES.....	20
CHARACTERISTICS OF THE SLAVONIC LANGUAGES.....	22
THE IMPORTANCE OF OLD SLAVONIC.....	23

BIBLIOGRAPHY

RUSSIAN.....	25
UKRAINIAN.....	28
BYELORUSSIAN.....	29
THE SLAVONIC GROUP.....	30

Section 1.

RUSSIAN

INTRODUCTION.....	31
ALPHABET.....	38
PRONUNCIATION.....	39
DIALECTS.....	42
VOWEL GRADATION AND VOWEL LENGTHENING.....	48
SLAVONIC CHARACTERISTICS.....	48
FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF RUSSIAN.....	50
MORPHOLOGY.....	52

Declensions of—

nouns.....	53
adjectives (note on).....	57
numerals.....	57
pronouns.....	60
adjectives.....	62
Adjectives (Comparison).....	65
Adverbs.....	67
Conjunctions and Particles.....	70
Prepositions.....	71
Conjugation of Verbs.....	72
Voices and tenses; Present and Infinitive.....	72
Classification.....	74
Future tense and aspects.....	75
Past tense.....	77
Conditional.....	78
Imperative.....	78

Section 2.

UKRAINIAN

INTRODUCTION.....	95
ALPHABET.....	101
PRONUNCIATION.....	102
DIALECTS.....	108
VOWEL GRADATION AND VOWEL LENGTHENING.....	110
SLAVONIC CHARACTERISTICS.....	111
FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF UKRAINIAN.....	114
FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF UKRAINIAN AND BYELORUSSIAN.....	115
FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF UKRAINIAN, GREAT RUSSIAN, AND BYELORUSSIAN.....	117
MORPHOLOGY.....	118

Declensions of—

nouns.....	118
numerals.....	129
pronouns.....	132
adjectives.....	137
Adjectives (Comparison).....	139
Adverbs.....	141
Conjunctions.....	144
Prepositions.....	144
Conjugation of Verbs.....	147
Voices and tenses; Present and Infinitive.....	147
Classification.....	150
Future tense and aspects.....	151
Past tense.....	153
Pluperfect.....	155
Conditional.....	155
Imperative.....	155
Gerunds.....	157
Participles.....	158
Verbal nouns.....	160
Conjugation, examples.....	161
Irregular verbs.....	162
Verbs of going and conveying.....	166
TEXTS.....	169

Section 3.
BYELORUSSIAN

INTRODUCTION.....	174
ALPHABET.....	178
PRONUNCIATION.....	181
DIALECTS.....	189
VOWEL GRADATION AND VOWEL LENGTHENING.....	191
SLAVONIC CHARACTERISTICS.....	192
FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF BYELORUSSIAN.....	195
FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF BYELORUSSIAN AND GREAT RUSSIAN.....	196
FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF BYELORUSSIAN AND UKRAINIAN.....	196
FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF BYELORUSSIAN, GREAT RUSSIAN, AND UKRAINIAN.....	199
MORPHOLOGY.....	201
Declensions of—	
nouns.....	202
numerals.....	212
pronouns.....	215
adjectives.....	219
Adjectives (Comparison).....	221
Adverbs.....	222
Conjunctions.....	224
Prepositions.....	225
Conjugation of Verbs.....	227
Voices and tenses; Present and Infinitive.....	227
Classification.....	230
Future tense and aspects.....	232
Future Perfect.....	234
Past tense.....	234
Pluperfect.....	236
Conditional.....	236
Imperative.....	237
Gerunds.....	238
Participles.....	239
Verbal nouns.....	240
Conjugation, examples.....	241
Irregular verbs.....	243
Verbs of going and conveying.....	245
TEXTS.....	247

PUBLISHER'S NOTE

Slavica is very pleased to be able to make available this Third, revised and expanded edition of Professor de Bray's work, which has been a standard reference for nearly thirty years. Eight of the twelve sections have been substantially revised for this edition, and considerable new material has been included.

In order to make the work even more useful, the author has recorded native speakers reading the texts at the end of each section. These recordings are available on cassettes or open-reel tapes from the publisher. For information and prices, please write directly to Slavica at P.O. Box 14388, Columbus, Ohio 43214.

Another innovation in the Third Edition is that the book has been split into three more manageable parts, each of which can be used individually, instead of a single book of over 1100 pages. One part is devoted to the South Slavic languages, a second to the West Slavic languages, and the third to the East Slavic languages. Since the parts are sold separately, students taking such commonly-taught courses as "Introduction to the South (West, East) Slavic Languages" will be able to use the appropriate volume, without having to buy and carry around the entire work.

Because the academic recession of the 1970's has so strongly depressed the market for scholarly books, it has been necessary to set this edition in more economical cold type, instead of the more elegant hot type with justified right margins which was used in the previous two editions. Slavica is grateful to UNESCO for a subvention which has met part of the costs of resetting the book. We are even more grateful to the typists who have done such a good job of coping with very difficult material. Eleanor B. Sapp typed the sections on Czech, Lusatian, Polish, and Slovenian. Karen L. Black typed the sections on Belorussian, Serbo-Croatian, Ukrainian, and much of the section on Old Church Slavonic. Debra E. Barco typed Bulgarian and Macedonian; Marcia Gauntt typed Slovak; David Birnbaum and Patricia Hansen typed Russian, and Joel and Monica Wilkinson typed part of the section on Old Church Slavonic. Dr. Black took overall responsibility for paginating, cross-referencing, checking corrections, and typing the Introduction and

Bibliography. I wish to thank her here for a complex job well done. Don D. Smith was in charge of checking the corrections from the second proofs and of making various other small but important corrections and improvements in the final camera-ready copy. I am grateful to him for careful attention to tedious and time-consuming work.

We have tried hard, by a system of double and even triple checking, to eliminate misprints, but some are bound to creep into a work of this complexity. Readers who find misprints are asked to send a list of them to the publisher at P.O. Box 14388, Columbus, Ohio 43214. A year or two after the publication of this work, we will publish a list of misprints in our journal, *Folia Slavica*, so that both individuals and libraries may correct their copies.

Columbus, Ohio
May 17, 1980

Charles E. Gribble
President and Editor

PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION

It is my pleasant duty to acknowledge with gratitude here the many useful suggestions and the generous encouragement of Professor N. B. Jopson, M.A., Professor of Comparative Philology in the University of Cambridge, Professor W. J. Rose, M.A., Ph.D., former Professor of Polish Literature and History and Director of the School of Slavonic and East European Studies, University of London, and Dr. W. A. Morison, B.A., Ph.D., formerly Lecturer in Comparative Slavonic Philology in the same institution. My sincere thanks are also due to Professor Sir Ellis Minns, Litt.D., F.B.A., of Cambridge, for looking through the first part of this text and making many valuable suggestions, especially as regards presentation, and also for his initial encouragement, without which this book might never have been offered for publication.

I also here express my sincere thanks to my numerous colleagues and friends for their invaluable help and advice with regard to the separate sections of this book: Professor G. Nandriş, Ph.D., Mr. A. Oleynyk, Professor S. Świaniewicz, Professor F. Ramovš, Miss Boža Anžič, Mr. Krum Tošov, Mr. Kiro Petrovski, Mr. D. M. Pavlović, Mr. A. Poberaj, Miss V. Jukova, Mr. K. Naumov, Mr. V. de S. Pinto, Mr. M. Kusseff, Dr. J. Pietrkiewicz, Dr. O. Kolman, Dr. V. Polák, Mrs. E. V. de Bray, Miss T. Ruppelđtová, Dr. E. M. Cyžowa, Dr. J. Rjenč, Rev. Dr. Č. Sipovič, and many others.

It gives me pleasure also specially to mention the tireless help, encouragement, and expert criticism of my wife, who also performed the stupendous feat of typing the entire work in preparation for printing. Her knowledge of several Slavonic languages and her understanding and sympathy with the aims of my work enabled her to make many valuable suggestions in shaping the book.

I would also like to thank my publishers, Messrs. J. M. Dent and Sons, Ltd., for their endless patience and unfailing encouragement in the writing of this work over a period of seven years and under various difficult circumstances.

Finally I warmly thank my printers, Messrs. Stephen Austin and Sons, Ltd., for their untiring perseverance and unfailing courtesy during the printing of my technically extremely difficult text and for the production of such excellent work.

The brief bibliography also serves the purpose of expressing my acknowledgments of indebtedness to the authors of the many valuable works which I have consulted. The list is not intended to be an exhaustive bibliography, but rather a guide to the student who wishes to start delving deeper for treasures which I here only indicate. (The purpose, plan, and method of using this book are explained in the following Introduction.)

Chalfont St. Giles
15. iv. 1950

PREFACE TO THE SECOND EDITION

In this edition the sections on Bulgarian, Czech and Polish have been corrected, revised and slightly expanded, where necessary. The section on Byelorussian has been fully revised and brought up to date in accordance with the new authoritative grammar of Byelorussian published by the Institute of Linguistics of the Byelorussian Academy of Sciences in Minsk. Some misprints have also been corrected in the section on Slovak.

A selection of the most important new practical works published since 1951 have been added to the bibliography.

I would like to express my warmest thanks to Dr. Václav Polák, Professor Ivan Duridanov, and Professor M. R. Sudnik and his colleagues in the Institute of Linguistics of the Byelorussian Academy of Sciences, Minsk, and to all my reviewers for their many helpful suggestions and criticisms.

New Barnet
11. x. 1968

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION

For this edition the author has attempted to revise and bring up to date all the chapters that had not been thoroughly revised for the second edition, namely the chapters on Old Slavonic, Russian, Ukrainian, Macedonian, Serbo-Croatian, Slovenian, Slovak and Lusatian (Sorbian). A number of new grammatical tables have been added, especially in the chapters on Old Slavonic and Serbo-Croatian, and the introduction to the chapter on Russian has been considerably expanded. In the chapter on Ukrainian a more modern ap-

proach to the subdivision of the dialects has been adopted on lines suggested by Professor F. T. Zhylkó of the Institute of Dialectology in Kiev. The chapters on Macedonian, Slovak and Lusatian in particular have been revised so as to comply with modern orthographical and grammatical norms. The chapters on Byelorussian, Bulgarian, Czech and Polish, which were revised for the second edition, have only been lightly revised, where necessary.

It is my pleasant duty to thank all my colleagues and friends who have helped me with advice, opinions and information in connection with my work for this edition, and in particular Professor R. I. Avanesov, Professor V. A. Artemov, Professor O. S. Akhmanova, Dr. E. A. Bryzgunova, Mr. B. K. Yoondin, Dr. I. Miloslavsky, Professor A. M. Babkin, Professor L. R. Zinder, Mr. V. Swoboda, Professor F. T. Zhylkó (mentioned above), Professor M. Zhovtobriuch and other colleagues at the Institute of Linguistics of the Ukrainian Academy of Sciences in Kiev, Academic B. Koneski, Academic H. Polenakovik, the late Professor Krum Toshev, Professor T. Stamatoski, Professor T. Dimitrovski, Professor B. Korubin and other colleagues at the Krste Misirkov Institute of the Macedonian Language, Skopje, Professor B. Vidoeski, Miss Olga Spirkoska, Professor M. Stevanović, the late Dr. B. Nikolić, Professor P. Ivić, Professor M. Ivić, Dr. I. Grickat-Radulović, Dr. O. Banković-Todorović and other colleagues of the Serbo-Croatian Language Institute of the Serbian Academy of Sciences, Academic L. Jonke, Dr. B. Finka, Dr. V. Putanec, Dr. D. Alerić and other colleagues of the Language Institute of the Yugoslav Academy of Sciences and Arts, Zagreb, Professor J. Jurančić, Dr. J. Rigler, Professor A. Bajec, Professor M. Tomšič, Dr. L. Legiša, and other colleagues of the Slovenian Language Institute of the Slovenian Academy of Sciences and Arts, Ljubljana, Professor J. Toporišič, Professor J. Zor, Professor J. Ružička, Professor L. Dvonč, and Professor V. Blanár of the L'udevít Štúr Institute of the Slovak Language of the Slovak Academy of Sciences, Miss Eva Ružičková, Dr. R. Pynsent, Dr. M. Corbridge-Patkanlow-ska, Professor H. Schuster-Šewc, Dr. L. Hajnec, Professor P. Nowotný, and Mr. J. Rjenč.

It is my pleasure also to acknowledge with sincere thanks the material help proffered by the Central Research Fund of the University of London and also by the Australian National University. Both generously helped me to make numerous visits to the Slavonic-speaking countries of Eastern Europe in pursuit of my research. I also express my gratitude to the then

Director of the School of Slavonic and East European Studies, University of London, Dr. G. Bolsover, to the Vice-Chancellor of the Australian National University in Canberra, Professor D. A. Low, and to the Dean of the Faculty of Arts, Dr. W. S. Ramson, for granting me study leave for research purposes between 1968 and 1976, without which I would not have had the opportunity to collect the necessary material for the completion of this work. To all the abovementioned, to my secretary of the Department of Slavonic Languages, the Australian National University, Ms. K. North, and to my publishers for their interest and continual support, I offer my most heartfelt thanks.

Finally, I wish to express my deep gratitude to the Slav Studies project of UNESCO, under the able guidance of Professor V. Tiourine, for their subsidy which enabled the project of the publication of this work to be realized.

If this work will in any way help its readers the better to understand the Slavonic languages, literatures and culture, and the peoples who have created them, it will have achieved its modest purpose.

МОЛЮ ЖЕ ВЪСѢХЪ ПОУЧИТАЖИТЕЛЪ. НЕ
МОЖЕТЕ КАТАИ, НЪ НОПРАВЛЪШЕ ПОУЧИТАНТЕ.
ТАКО БО И СЪЗІ АПЪЛЪ ПАУЛЪ ГЛАГЪ.
ВАГЕ, А НЕ КЛАНЪТЕ. АМИНЪ.

Canberra
1 July 1977

ABBREVIATIONS

A., Acc.	Accusative	g., gend.	genders
Act.	Active	G., Gen.	Genitive
adj.	adjective	Germ.	German
adv.	adverb	Gk.	Greek
an.	animate		
Aor.	Aorist	I., Instr.	Instrumental
approx.	approximate	I.E.	Indo-European
arch.	archaic	Imper.,	Imperative
art.	article	Imperat.	Imperfect
aux.	auxiliary	Impers.	impersonal
b.	born	Impfve.	Imperfective
B-R.,	Byelorussian	inan.	inanimate
Byelor.	Bulgarian	Ind.	Indicative
Bulg.		indef.	indefinite
		Infin.	Infinitive
Card.	Cardinal	interrog.	interrogative
cf.	compare	intrans.	intransitive
Cl.	class	irreg.	irregular
coll.	collective	irr. vb.	irregular verb
colloq.	colloquial	Iter.	Iterative
Comp.	Comparative		
Comp. Past	Compound Past	L., Loc.	Locative
Cond.	Conditional		(= Prepositional)
conj.	conjunction	Lat.	Latin
cons.	consonant	L.L.,	Lower Lusatian
Cr.	Croätian	Lower L.	literally
C.S.	Common Slav	lit.	literary language
Cyr.	Cyrillic	lit. lang.	Lusatian
Cz.	Czech	Lus.	
d.	died	m., masc.	masculine
D., Dat.	Dative	Mac.	Macedonian
Demonstr.	Demonstrative	m. impers.	masculine impersonal
def.	definite	m. pers.	masculine personal
dial.	dialect	Mod. Gk.	Modern Greek
Distrib.	Distributive		
du.	dual	n., neut.	neuter
ed.	edition	N., Nom.	Nominative
encl.	enclitic	neg.	negative
Eng.	English	num.	numeral
fam.	familiar	Obl.	Oblique (case)
f., fem.	feminine	Opt.	Optative
Fr.	French	Ord.	Ordinal
Freq.	Frequentative	O.S.	Old (Church) Slavonic
Fut.	Future	p.	page

P., pers.	person, personal	vol.	volume
pal.	palatal		
Part.,	Participle	Zogr.	Codex Zographensis
Partic.	Participle	=	equals (translation)
Pass.	Passive	>	into, becomes
Past Ger.	Past Gerund	<	from, derived from
Perf.	Perfect	><	as opposed to
Pers. Pron.	Personal Pronoun	*	indicates a sup-
Pfve.	Perfective		posed, deduced
phon.	phonetic script		form
pl., plur.	plural		
Plup.	Pluperfect		
poet.	poetical		
Pol.	Polish		
Pos.	Positive		
Poss. Pron.	Possessive Pronoun		
P.P.A.	Past Participle		
	Active		
P.P.P.	Past Participle		
	Passive		
prep.	preposition		
Pres.	Present		
Pres. Ger.	Present Gerund		
pron.	pronounce(d)		
R., Russ.	Russian		
Reflex.	Reflexive		
reg.	regular		
Rel. Pron.	Relative Pronoun		
s., sg.,	singular		
sing.	Serbian		
Sb.			
Sbcr.,	Serbocroatian		
Serboocr.			
Slk.	Slovak		
Sln.	Slovenian		
Span.	Spanish		
st.	stem		
subst.	substantive		
Sup.	Superlative		
trans.	transitive		
Ukr.	Ukrainian		
U.L.,	Upper		
L.	Upper Lusatian		
V., Voc.	Vocative		
vb.	verb		
V.N.	Verbal Noun		

INTRODUCTION

The Purpose of this Book

This book is an attempt to simplify the task of learning the Slav languages as a group for those who know one of them already. It was originally conceived during the 1939-1945 war with a more limited programme.¹ It has a scientific, philological basis. But as it is not intended exclusively for philologists and university students it is written on as nearly "popular" lines as such a subject permits, with a minimum of specialized terminology. It is intentionally an effort at popularization, as the writer believes that all those knowing any one Slavonic language can with profit widen their linguistic horizon by the relatively easy method of learning other Slavonic languages. Those knowing Russian should interest themselves in the Balkans and/or Central Europe, and *vice versa*. A consciousness would thus grow up of the unity of Europe and the continuity, both geographical and cultural, of Russia with Western Europe by way of the intervening central region of Eastern Europe.

It has been the writer's experience that many officials and workers in various fields and even teachers and examiners are given the task of dealing with material in the Slav languages as a group on the strength of their knowledge of only one of them. It is to help this class of language worker, among others, that this work aims. It should be equally useful to the student (whether academic or not) of any of the Slav languages (even if he is a beginner), when his curiosity drives him to "look over the fence" and find out something about the other Slavonic languages beyond.

It is thus also an introduction to the comparative study of the modern Slavonic languages. In these three volumes we give a summary of every language of the group, including Old Slavonic—a synthesis of a very extensive field of knowledge, difficult to master just because of the closeness of one Slav language to another. For every language we try to give a list of its most characteristic phonetic and morphological features, thus showing where the main differences and similarities should be expected and observed.

¹ See p. 18.

The Plan and Arrangement of this Book

For the sake of clarity and simplicity each language is treated in a separate section, giving the student a complete conspectus of a clearly defined subject—a single language. This is a new method of approach in dealing with comparative Slavonic grammar, calculated to suit the English beginner with only a modest experience in the Slavonic field. Many a student has found learned works from the Continent forbidding and confusing as an introduction to the comparative philology of the Slavonic languages, for these give as examples of the points they are illustrating rare and archaic words by the side of common words, words from obscure dialects by the side of words from the modern literary and conversational languages. From such works it is impossible to get a clear, working knowledge of any separate modern Slavonic literary or spoken language, for that is not what such books intend to impart. But the English student is often of a practical turn of mind and his needs may rightly be satisfied.

This book starts with a brief summary of the phonetics and grammar of Old Slavonic (also called Old Bulgarian). A knowledge of this dead language casts a great deal of light on the kinship of the modern Slavonic languages, just as a knowledge of Latin helps one to understand the Romance group of languages as a whole. But it must be borne in mind that Old Slavonic is not a "parent language," but rather an "elder sister" language of the *South* Slav group, preserved exclusively in Orthodox ecclesiastical texts. (The South Slav group also includes modern Bulgarian, Macedonian, Serbocroatian, and Slovenian.) Old Slavonic is the nearest we have today to "Common Slav," the "reconstructed" and supposed parent language of all three groups. The East Slav group consists of Russian, Ukrainian, and Byelorussian, while the Western group comprises Czech, Slovak, Polish, and Lusatian or Wendish. Old Slavonic differs from "Common Slav" in a number of important features, e.g. in the combinations of vowels and liquids. But on the whole it is sufficiently close to Common Slav to be used by the student as the essential pivot for passing from one Slavonic language to another.

Each section is built on the same plan:—

1. a brief history of the development of the language together with references to its main writers;

2. a more detailed section on its script and sounds (orthography and descriptive phonetics);
3. a summary of its characteristic features, presented in historical perspective, i.e. compared with Old Slavonic or Common Slav and/or the closely related modern Slav languages—perhaps the most important part of each section. This is either preceded or followed by:
4. a brief summary of the main dialects. These are dealt with mainly from the point of view of their contributions to the formation of the literary language. They are not regarded as "languages" in their own right and of equal status to the generally recognized literary languages. The existence of a literature in a given language and the acceptance and use of the language in a cultured society have been taken as the criteria for dividing off languages from dialects;
5. a concise summary of the "grammar" of the language (its morphology).
6. a special section, where necessary, on word order with enclitics. This subject is always a stumbling block in the mastery of an active knowledge of those languages which have enclitics (i.e. South and West Slav here);
7. a few pages of selected texts (without any commentary) as samples of the language as it is printed for the native (i.e. without stress accents) to serve as illustration and reading practice for the student.

Each section also adheres as rigidly as possible to the same scheme and order of explaining the details in the above parts, so as to render the comparison of these details between any two or more of these languages as easy as possible. A minimum of directly comparative tables is included, thereby leaving the student to compare any language he likes of the group with any other. This overcomes the difficulty of different people starting out from a knowledge of different single languages.

For Old Slavonic, Byelorussian, Slovenian, and Macedonian till late there have been no text-books at all in English, while for Ukrainian, Bulgarian, and Slovak until recently aids have been only inadequate. For these languages, therefore, fresh material is presented to the English reader; but at the same time it is put *in perspective* and connected with knowledge previously available. The section on the recently recognized Macedonian language is an entirely new

contribution to Slavonic studies in any West European language.

It will be seen, therefore, that this work also attempts to fill gaps in the knowledge of the English student, rather than cover familiar ground over again. For this reason less space is given to Russian (as already extensively treated and studied) and Serbo-croatian for which grammars, similar to those for Russian, have been available. But Czech and Polish, owing to their complex morphology and the different arrangement of their grammars in the better works, have been rather more fully dealt with here to show their close connection with the other Slavonic languages. Relatively more space, therefore, is devoted to them and the languages named above for which material has so far been unavailable or only inadequate in English.

Any other disparities of length under the separate headings in each section are due to (a) the not sufficiently known lack of adequate material in this country, especially on the more obscure languages of this group; (b) the fact that the original wartime conception of the book covered only Old Slavonic, Russian, Serbo-croatian, and Bulgarian, and that the greatest possible brevity for these was required.¹ The sections on these last-named languages have subsequently been revised and brought up to date, but not expanded to the length of the other sections, for the reasons given above.

As this book is mainly concerned with showing the general principles of phonetic and grammatical structure of each language rather than with the study of individual words, a word index has been deliberately omitted. In compensation, the contents have been tabulated as fully as possible to facilitate prompt comparison between the sections. Thus, for example, it is very easy to compare the behaviour of the adjectives in all the languages given by simply looking under the heading "The (Declension of the) Adjectives" under "Morphology" in the Contents List for each language.

The Method of Using this Book

The student should be warned that, as this book attempts a synthesis of a very vast field, the material given is necessarily very condensed. The student, therefore, and especially the beginner, should not attempt to absorb too much at a time. If he bites off

¹ See also p. 15.

a little at a time, he will more easily avoid mental indigestion.

As a general word of advice one may say that a person knowing one Slavonic language and approaching another for the first time is well advised to assume in the first place that he *knows* the new language in *outline*; and then—far more important and difficult—carefully and continuously to note and study all differences of phonetics, form, grammar, syntax, and meaning. He must always bear in mind that he is dealing with a really different language with different sounds, intonations, rhythms, and a different historical and sociological background, and different neighbouring influences. In the Slavonic field these languages are different and yet very similar and closely interlinked by linguistic, social and spiritual ties. Their literary vocabularies differ more than those in the Romance languages, and the "speech habits" in the conversational languages of the various Slavs are also very distinct. But the basic vocabulary for the ordinary things of everyday life is strikingly similar—a phenomenon which reminds one of the broad similarities of outlook and attitude to life which undoubtedly exist among the Slavs.

For the Englishman each Slavonic language presents its own difficulties and it would be fruitless to discuss which is the most difficult for him to master. But the difficulties to be met with can all be mastered in time by interest and enthusiasm, because the Slavs are, after all, distant cousins of the British, and often large passages of their languages can be translated literally and in almost the same word order and still make sense! This is impossible with more remote languages.

The importance also of using the brief section on Old Slavonic as a basis for learning another Slavonic language or for studying the whole group cannot be over-emphasized. The trouble of doing this will certainly be repaid and the task greatly facilitated. The student who takes this trouble will see in true perspective the relationship of one Slavonic language to another and gain a real mastery of several languages with an ease that will surprise him or her and give deep satisfaction.

Finally, the student is advised to make a careful study of the sound laws that can be inferred from the sections dealing with the characteristics of each language. Besides bringing out the salient differences of each tongue, these will explain many apparent irregularities and changes in the declensions and conjugations, etc. The importance of a patient study of the

phonology (Lautlehre, or historical phonetics) can hardly be overstressed.

For a more detailed description of the languages and for adequate exercises the student is referred to the special grammars of the languages concerned, a list of which is appended in the brief bibliography which precedes each of the three main language groups. Complete lists, e.g. of exceptions, details of syntax, etc., have purposely been often omitted for the sake of brevity, as has all such information as, e.g., the names of the days and months, which can be found in dictionaries.

Each section is furnished with a short appendix of texts on which the student is urged to try his skill with the knowledge he acquires from the study of the preceding pages. He will find he has embarked on a journey of endless fascination.

* * *

The ultimate aim of this work is to enable a direct and reliable approach to be made to the wider issues reflected in the Slavonic literatures and their background, through an accurate knowledge of the Slavonic languages, and so help to create true understanding and friendship between the Slav peoples, great and small, and the English-speaking world. The student is urged always to have these "wider issues" in view and to remember that even an *accurate* translation, if it is torn from its context and background, can be totally misleading and distort the truth. To know the reality, truth, and beauty of the Slavonic world is an unforgettable experience. It enriches and brings hope.

ὄναρ ἀντ' ὀνειροπότῳ
πολλῶν τε καὶ καλῶν

The Distribution of the Slavonic Languages

The greater part of Eastern Europe between Germany and the Urals is inhabited by Slavs. In the western part of this area Polish, Czech, and Slovak are spoken, as well as Lusatian, or Wendish, in a small linguistic island south-east of Berlin round the towns of Cottbus and Bautzen. Together these four languages form the West Slav group.

Adjoining these areas, to the east, Byelorussian—or White Russian—and Ukrainian are spoken, which

together with Great Russian form the East Slav group. These linguistic areas are now in the U.S.S.R., but prior to 1939 they extended in the west to inside the frontiers of Poland for both languages, and into Czechoslovakia for Ukrainian only.

The Ukrainian language is essentially a unity, though in the west, in Galicia, it is naturally more influenced by Polish. The name Ruthenian came into English via German from non-classical Latin, being a corruption of the word "Rusin," meaning vaguely a Russian, more specifically a Ukrainian or "Little Russian," as they used to be called. This curious corruption of their name was a convenient cloak under the Austro-Hungarian Empire for disguising the essentially East Slav, or "Russian," character of their Ukrainian subjects (the name Russian really covers all three branches of the East Slav group, the people whom we know popularly as Russians being more precisely Great Russians). All Ukrainians now prefer the fairly modern name, Ukrainian. In more recent times "Ruthenian" came specifically to refer to Subcarpathian Russia, later called Transcarpathian Ukraine, at the extreme eastern end of pre-1939 Czechoslovakia and now incorporated into the Ukrainian S.S.R.—a convenient, but illogical, restriction of its meaning.

Byelorussian, a language even more akin to Great Russian than Ukrainian is to Great Russian, and with a very phonetic spelling, is even younger as a literary language and has also been called in some books White Ruthenian. In Polish the word "ruski" now means only Ruthenian or Ukrainian, whereas in Russian it means (Great) Russian. Owing to the political associations of the name "White Russian," Soviet authorities have also called it "Byelorussian," preserving the Russian word for "white".

North-east and east of the Byelorussian and Ukrainian speaking areas we find the Great Russian area, the language generally known loosely in English as Russian, the language of such great writers as Pushkin, Tolstoy, Dostoyevsky, etc. Geographically one might say that, whereas the Dniepr is the great river of the Ukraine, the Volga with its tributaries forms the chief artery of the Great Russian speaking area, but in its lower reaches it flows through territory peopled by many other nationalities besides the Great Russians. The Great Russian language spread across a sparsely populated Siberia from the seventeenth century onwards with the comparatively peaceful expansion of the Russian Empire across Northern Asia.

South of Austria, Hungary, and Romania, we have the area of the third, Southern, group of Slav tongues.

In the very north-west corner of it, Slovenian, or Slovene, is spoken by not quite two million people, still not all included in Yugoslavia. East and south of this area we have the Serbocroatian speaking region, corresponding roughly with Yugoslavia's northern, eastern, and south-western frontiers. By the Catholics of Croätia, Dalmatia, etc., and the Moslems of Bosnia, Serbocroatian is generally written in the Latin alphabet, whereas in Serbia the Cyrillic alphabet is prevalent; but as explained later, these and dialectical differences cannot be regarded as forming either racial or linguistic boundaries (the different alphabets are only an indication of a difference of religion), as the language is essentially one, i.e. mutually intelligible without previous study. This cannot truthfully be said of any other two Slav languages considered together except "Serbian" and "Croatian". In Southern Yugoslavia, Northern Greece and South-Western Bulgaria, the Macedonian dialects are prevalent. Linguistically they are somewhat more than a transitional stage to Bulgarian. Since 1944 the Macedonian literary language has been officially recognized for all purposes in the territory of the federative Macedonian People's Republic in Yugoslavia. Bulgarian is the fourth separate literary language of this (South Slav) group, spoken over an area pretty well corresponding to Bulgaria's political frontiers; and, owing to its greater divergence from Serbocroatian, it is classed by some (with Macedonian) as East South Slav as opposed to West South Slav.

Characteristics of the Slavonic Languages

Apart from the Cyrillic and the adapted Latin scripts which are purely superficial characteristics, the main features of the Slavonic languages are:—

Pronunciation:—

1. Varying degrees of "palatalization," i.e. variants of the consonants obtained by using the palate to alter their quality.
2. Few true diphthongs.
3. Agglomerations of consonants (but no aspirated consonants).

Grammar:—

4. A high degree of inflection in nouns, pronouns, adjectives, and verbs, comparable to Latin in their complexity.

5. "Aspects" in verbs, a duality of forms presenting an action regarded as either completed or not, or else as single or habitual.

Sentence construction:—

6. Frequent inversion of sentence order, i.e. verb first and subject later, as in Spanish. In Slavonic, owing to the inflections, the word order is much more elastic and variable than in English, French, or German.

The Importance of Old Slavonic

The necessity of knowing Old Slavonic for acquiring a knowledge of the Slavonic group of languages is comparable to the need for knowing Latin for learning the Romance group. Old Slavonic is now a dead and purely ecclesiastical language, but its knowledge gives one an immense insight into, and understanding of, the reasons for the differences between the Slavonic languages. Hence it is very much worth while getting familiar with it, if one wishes to learn more than one language of the Slavonic group, or to study any of these languages at all seriously in its historical aspect, or again to study the group as a whole—a by no means impossible, even if exacting, task.

BIBLIOGRAPHY
(Aids to further study)

The following list is not intended to be an exhaustive bibliography of all the books written on every aspect of the Slavonic languages. In conformity with the introductory and descriptive character of this work, we give below under the headings for the separate languages a selected list of some of the best and most modern grammars, books on their orthography and phonetics, the easier historical grammars, and the most useful dictionaries for each language (in this order). Precedence is given to works in English, after which works in French and German follow—with works in the Slavonic languages themselves given last. This is done purely on the assumption that the English student will be, to start with, more at home in the West European languages, as is usually the case.

The author and title are given as in the original work except in the case of dictionaries, where the title is translated into English. The script of the author's name helps to indicate the origin of dictionaries published in the Slav countries and aiming primarily at assisting natives of those countries. Such works naturally do not contain all the information an English student needs, but can be very useful to him nevertheless.

For the sake of brevity we give preference to latest editions where advisable. We have excluded most works not completed at the time of our writing, and also very large works such as the average student would find inaccessible or beyond his means.

We conclude with a very brief list of the main works on the Slavonic languages as a group.

It will be seen that the student has at his command a very rich variety of aids, if works in the Slavonic languages are included.

RUSSIAN

- B. O. UNBEGAUN. Russian Grammar. Oxford, 1957.
I. M. PULKINA. A Short Russian Reference Grammar. Moscow, 2nd ed. n.d.
W. HARRISON, Y. CLARKSON, S. LE FLEMING. Colloquial Russian. London, 1973.
BEN T. CLARK. Russian for Americans. New York-London, 1973.
G. STILLMAN, L. STILLMAN, W. E. HARKINS. Introductory Russian Grammar. New York, 1972.

- G. A. BIRKETT. A Modern Russian Course. London, 1942.
 A. H. SEMEONOFF. A New Russian Grammar. London, 1962.
 N. FORBES. Russian Grammar. Oxford, 1914, 2nd edition 1916.
 N. FORBES. Elementary Russian Grammar, revised by E. Hill. Oxford, 1943.
 S. C. BOYANUS and N. B. JOPSON. Spoken Russian. London, 1939.
 S. C. BOYANUS. A Manual of Russian Pronunciation. London, 1955.
 D. JONES, D. WARD. The Phonetics of Russian. Cambridge, 1969.
 M. И. МАТУСЕВИЧ. Современный русский язык—Фонетика. Москва, 1976.
 P. И. АВАНЕСОВ. Русское литературное произношение. Москва, 1972.
 Л. Л. БУЛАНИН. Фонетика современного русского языка. Москва, 1972.
 Е. А. БРЫЗГУНОВА. Звуки и интонация русской речи. (with records.) Москва, 1969.
 Е. А. БРЫЗГУНОВА. Практическая фонетика и интонация русского языка. Москва, 1963.
 М. В. ПАНОВ. Русская фонетика. Москва, 1967.
 В. Г. КОСТОМАРОВ, В. И. ПОЛОВНИКОВА, Л. Н. ШВЕДОВА. Русский язык для иностранных студентов. Москва, 1974.
 И. ПУЛЬКИНА, Е. ЗАХАВА-НЕКРАСОВА. Русский язык. Москва, n.d.
 ed. Н. Ю. ШВЕДОВА. Грамматика современного русского литературного языка. Москва, 1970.
 А. А. ЦАХМАТОВ. Очерк современного русского литературного языка. Москва, 1941.
 В. А. БОГОРОДИЦКИЙ. Общий курс русской грамматики. Москва-Ленинград, 1935.
 Л. А. БУЛАХОВСКИЙ. Курс русского литературного языка. 1937.
 P. И. АВАНЕСОВ—В. Н. СИДОРОВ. Очерк грамматики русского литературного языка. 1937.
 Л. В. ЩЕРБА. Грамматика русского языка. 7th edition, 1947.
 А. BOGUSŁAWSKI, S. KAROLAK. Gramatyka rosyjska. Warszawa, 1973.
 В. В. ВИНГРАДОВ. Русский язык. Москва, 1947.
 G. VINOKUR. La langue russe, translated by Yves Millet. Paris, 1947.
 Г. ВИНЮКР. Русский язык. Москва, 1945.
 W. K. MATTHEWS. Russian Historical Grammar. London, 1960.
 Н. ДУРНОВО. Введение в историю русского языка. 1927.
 К. Н. МЕЙЕР. Historische Grammatik der russischen Sprache, I. Bonn, 1933.

- Л. А. БУЛАХОВСКИЙ. Исторический комментарий к литературному русскому языку. 1937.
 В. В. ИВАНОВ. Историческая грамматика русского языка. Москва, 1964.
 В. И. БОРКОВСКИЙ, П. С. КУЗНЕЦОВ. Историческая грамматика русского языка. Москва, 1965.
 P. И. АВАНЕСОВ. Очерки русской диалектологии, I. Москва, 1949.
 Е. Ф. КАРСКИЙ. Русская диалектология. 1924.
 П. С. КУЗНЕЦОВ. Русская диалектология. Москва, 1951.
 Dictionaries
 M. WHEELER. Russian-English Dictionary. Oxford, 1972.
 И. Р. ГАЛЬПЕРИН. Большой англо-русский словарь, I, II. Москва, 1972.
 *M. A. O'BRIEN. New English-Russian and Russian-English Dictionary. London, 1930.
 V. MÜLLER and S. BOYANUS. Russian-English Dictionary. Moscow, 1937, and London, 1943.
 В. К. МЮЛЛЕР. English-Russian Dictionary. Moscow, 1967.
 А. И. СМИРНИЦКИЙ, О. С. АХМАНОВА and others. Russian-English Dictionary. Moscow, 1965.
 L. SEGAL. Russian-English Dictionary. London, 1942.
 L. SEGAL. English-Russian Dictionary. London, 1948.
 *K. BLATTNER. Russian-German, German-Russian Dictionary. Langenscheidt, Berlin, 1929, and New York, 1945.
 E. DAUM, W. SCHENK. A Dictionary of Russian Verbs. Leipzig, 1974.
 С. И. ОЖЕГОВ. Словарь русского языка. Москва, 1972.
 P. И. АВАНЕСОВ, С. И. ОЖЕГОВ. Русское литературное произношение и ударение. Москва, 1959.
 С. И. ОЖЕГОВ, А. Б. ШАПИРО. Орфографический словарь русского языка. Москва, 1959.
 ed. Д. 9. РОЗЕНТАЛЬ. Слитно или раздельно? Москва, 1972.
 ed. А. И. МОЛОТКОВ. Фразеологический словарь русского языка. Москва, 1967.
 Д. Н. УШАКОВ (and others). Толковый словарь русского языка, 4 vols. Moscow, 1935-1940.
 А. ПРЕОБРАЖЕНСКИЙ. Этимологический словарь русского языка, 2 vols. (А-Суля). Moscow, 1910-1916.
 M. VASMER. Russisches etymologisches Wörterbuch. 3 vols. Heidelberg, 1953, 1955, 1958.

*With references to grammatical tables.

- В. ДАЛЬ. Толковый словарь живого великорусского языка, 4 vols. 4th edition. St. Petersburg-Moscow, 1912. Photographic copy of 2nd edition of 1880-1882, 4 vols., Moscow, 1935.
- UKRAINIAN
- G. LUSKYJ, J. B. RUDNYCKYJ. A Modern Ukrainian Grammar. Winnipeg, 1967.
- A. П. МЕДУШЕВСЬКИЙ, Р. Г. ЗЯТКОВСЬКА. Ukrainian Grammar. Київ, 1963.
- М. А. ЖОВТОВРЮХ, Б. М. КУЛИК. Курс сучасної української літературної мови. 2 vols. Київ, 1965.
- . Сучасна українська літературна мова. Вступ. Фонетика. Київ, 1976.
- Народний Комісаріат Освіти УРСР. Український правопис. Київ, 1961.
- E. BORŠČAK. Lectures ukrainiennes, with grammar. Paris, 1946.
- J. ZIŁYŃSKI. Opis fonetyczny języka ukraińskiego. Kraków, 1932.
- J. B. RUDNYCKYJ. Ukrainian Language and its Dialects (in Ukrainian). Українська мова, її початки, історія й говори, 5th edition. Sydney-Canberra, 1978.
- Dictionaries
- М. Л. ПОДВЕЗЬКО, М. І. БАЛЛА. English-Ukrainian Dictionary. Київ, 1974.
- М. Л. ПОДВЕЗЬКО. Ukrainian-English Dictionary. Київ, 1957.
- В. С. ІЛЬІН, and others. Ukrainian-Russian Dictionary. Київ, 1965.
- М. Л. ПОДВЕЗЬКО. English-Ukrainian Dictionary. Київ, 1948.
- Д. І. ГАНИЧ, І. С. ОЛІЙНИК. Russian-Ukrainian Dictionary. 2nd ed. Київ, 1974.
- І. К. БІЛОДІД, С. І. ГОЛОВАЩУК, et al. Russian-Ukrainian Dictionary. 3 vols. Київ, 1968-1969.
- М. Я. КАЛИНОВИЧ. Russian-Ukrainian Dictionary. Moscow, 1948.
- Б. Д. ГРІНЧЕНКО. Ukrainian-Russian Dictionary, 2 vols. Київ, 1907.
- И. М. КИРИЧЕНКО, and others. Ukrainian-Russian Dictionary. 6 vols. Київ, 1953-1963.
- ед. С. І. ГОЛОВАЩУК, В. П. РУСАНІВСЬКИЙ. Орфографічний словник української мови. Київ, 1976.

- ед. М. А. ЖОВТОВРЮХ. Українська літературна вимова і наголос. Київ, 1973.
- М. І. ПОГРІВНИЙ. Словник наголосів української літературної мови. Київ, 1964.
- С. Н. ANDRUSYSHEN, J. N. KRETT. Ukrainian-English Dictionary. Toronto, 1957.
- BYELORUSSIAN
- PETER J. MAYO. A Grammar of Byelorussian. Sheffield, 1976.
- А. КРИВИЦКИЙ, А. Е. МИХНЕВИЧ, А. И. ПОДЛУЖНЫЙ. Белорусский язык для небелоруссов. Минск, 1973.
- Б. ТАРАШКЕВИЧ. Беларуская Граматыка для школ. 5th edition. Vilna (Вільня), 1929.
- Р. АСТРОУСКИ. Беларускі Правапіс. Vilna, 1930.
- Я. КОЛАС, К. ГУРСКИ, Я. ШКЛЯР. Сінтаксіс беларускага языка. 1939.
- К. К. АТРАХОВІЧ (КРАПІВА), М. Г. БУЛАХАУ. Граматыка беларускай мовы. 2 vols. Минск, 1962, 1966.
- Dictionaries
- М. І Г. ГАРЕЦКІЯ. Small Russian-Byelorussian and Byelorussian-Russian Dictionaries. 2 vols. Vilna, 1921.
- В. ЛАСТОУСКИ. Russian-Byelorussian Dictionary. Kaunas, 1924. Erratic.
- С. НЕКРАШЕВИЧ—М. БАЙКОВ. Russian-Byelorussian Dictionary. 1928.
- Б. ДРУЦКІ-ПАДБЯРЭСКИ. Byelorussian-Polish Dictionary. Vilna, 1929.
- С. М. ГРАВЧИКОВ. Byelorussian-Russian Dictionary. Minsk, 1975.
- К. К. КРАПІВА. Byelorussian-Russian Dictionary. Moscow, 1962.
- Я. КОЛАС, К. КРАПІВА, П. ГЛЕВКА. Russian-Byelorussian Dictionary. Moscow, 1953.
- А. Я. БАХАНЬКОУ, І. М. ГАЙДУКЕВИЧ, П. П. ШУБА. Тлумачальны слоўнік беларускай мовы. Минск, 1972.
- М. П. ЛОБАН, М. Р. СУДНІК. Арфаграфічны слоўнік. Minsk, 1966.
- А. І. ПАДЛУЖНЫ, В. М. ЧЭКМАН. Гукі беларускай мовы. Минск, 1973.
- ед. К. К. АТРАХОВІЧ. Тлумачальны слоўнік беларускай мовы. Vol. 1, 1977 (А-В), vol. 2, 1978 (Г-К), Минск.
- ед. В. У. МАРТЫНАУ. Этымалагічны слоўнік беларускай мовы. Vol. 1, (А-Б), Минск 1978.

THE SLAVONIC GROUP

- W. J. ENTWISTLE and W. A. MORISON. Russian and the Slavonic Languages. London, 1964.
- A. MEILLET. Le slave commun. 2nd edition. Paris, 1934.
- A. VAILLANT. Grammaire comparée des langues slaves, I. Lyon, vol. I, 1950; vol. II, 1958; vol. III, 1966.
- W. VONDRÁK. Vergleichende slavische Grammatik. 2 vols. Göttingen, 1924, 1928.
- V. HRUBÝ. Vergleichende Grammatik der slavischen Sprachen. Hartleben, Vienna-Leipzig. Sketchy and out of date.
- A. M. СЕЛИЩЕВ. Славянское языкознание, I: Западнo-славянские языки. Москва, 1941.
- Н. КОНДРАШОВ. Славянские языки. Москва, 1956.
- С. Б. БЕРНШТЕЙН. Очерк сравнительной грамматики славянских языков. Москва, 1961.
- K. HORAĽEK. Úvod do studia slovanských jazyků. Praha, 1962.
- T. LEHR-SPLAWIŃSKI, W. KURASZKIEWICZ, F. SZAWSKI. Przegląd i charakterystyka języków słowiańskich. Warszawa, 1954.
- ed. W. WEINGART. Slovanské spisovné jazyky v době přitomné. Praha, 1937.
- R. NAHTIGAL. Slovanski jeziki, I. Ljubljana, 1952.
- O. BROCH. Slavische Phonetik. Heidelberg, 1911.
- ed. T. LEHR-SPLAWIŃSKI. Chrestomatia slowiańska. I (South Slav). Kraków, 1949; II (West Slav). Kraków, 1950.
- E. BERNEKER. Slavische Chrestomathie. Trübnner, Strassburg, 1902.
- E. BERNEKER. Slavisches etymologisches Wörterbuch (to "morü" only). Heidelberg, 1908-1914.
- F. MIKLOSICH. Dictionnaire abrégé de six langues slaves. 1885. Reprinted.

The attention of students is also drawn to the articles on the Slavonic languages in the various encyclopedias and, for samples of the spoken language, to the various series of records available in Great Britain and elsewhere.

SECTION 1. RUSSIAN

INTRODUCTION

Russian, or more properly Great Russian, is by far the most widely known of the modern Slavonic languages and deservedly so. Its literature, which only matured in the nineteenth century after the development of the modern language, transcends mere national interest and touches upon the widest fields of universal experience and the most profound problems of the human soul. One can safely say that the fine traditions of the nineteenth century, which produced so great a literature under difficult circumstances, are being maintained under the Soviet regime today, where the Russian book, be it classical or modern, is more widely read than ever before since the vast spread of education was started. And the great new experiments in living and organization carried out in the U.S.S.R. in recent years give an additional filip to the interest in the language of so brilliant and vital a people. Russian poetry, too, whose appeal is naturally almost limited to those who understand and appreciate the language, is undoubtedly comparable to the greatest in Europe, for in its great range and variety both in subject and in pure musicality it offers gems and flowers of human expression of supreme beauty and the widest appeal.

On the very subjective subject of the pleasingness of the mere sound of the language, I cannot do better than modestly (and gratefully) quote the opinion of a British scholar. Professor N.B. Jopson, the notable philologist and linguist, thus expressed himself at a lecture at London University in March, 1937, on the subject of the pleasing sound of Russian to the British listener:—

"Whether it is the wealth of the Russian vocabulary that attention is focussed on, or the nobility of expression and the harmony of the language, it is generally recognized that Russian can hold its own in the fairest company. Those who belong to the *profanum vulgus*, to whom the Cyrillic alphabet, however attractive it may be to the eye, is a mystery, cannot of course be expected to feel the greatness of the language. It is nevertheless a matter of common experience that a person completely ignorant of Russian, who for the first time hears the language spoken by a native, will involuntarily exclaim: 'Why, how melodious Russian sounds—I always thought it was so hard,

nothing else but a succession of long syllables, of unpronounceable words.' Nothing is false than so unflattering a judgment, for once a learner has sufficiently overcome the difficulties of the language to be able to understand it when spoken, and to appreciate, dimly perhaps, but still appreciate, the written word of the great writers, his admiration increases till he is unrestrainedly ready to subscribe to the touching and famous words of one of Russia's noblest writers:-

"Во дни сомнений, во дни тягостных раздумий о судьбах моей родины, - ты один мне поддержка и опора, о великий, могучий, правдивый и свободный русский язык. Не будь тебя - как не впасть в отчаяние, при виде всего что совершается дома? Но нельзя верить, чтобы такой язык не был дан великому народу."

(Тургенев.)

Translation:-

"In days of doubt, in days of painful reflection on the fate of my country, you alone give succour and support to me, o great, mighty, truthful and free Russian tongue. Were it not for you, how should one not fall into despair when seeing all that is taking place at home? But it is impossible to believe that such a language was not given to a great people."

These indeed were words written in difficult days - prophetic too, for the heroic resistance of the Russian people in the titanic struggle during the second world war has proved their title to greatness.

Professor Jopson then went on to discuss the reasons for his opinion. He pointed out that pleasantness is a subjective matter, and in this case is largely dependent on the similarity of Russian to English, for to the speaker of a language his own language, when well pronounced, cannot seem ugly. There were three main points of similarity: 1. the strong stress accent common to these two distant cousins; 2. the fact that there are few sounds in Russian unfamiliar to the English ear; 3. and also that both languages tolerate considerable agglomerations of consonants in their words. Later in the lecture, Professor Jopson, when discussing the differences between the two languages, expressed an opinion with which I, who have been accustomed to hearing English around me since the age of nine,

cannot agree. He said: "Characteristic of Russian, and, unfortunately perhaps, absent from English, is a peculiarly harmonious and sonorous vowel system." In my opinion, well-spoken English can be equally pleasing and dignified just on the score of its vowel sounds, for it is comparatively poor in its variety of consonants. The second main differentiating feature which Professor Jopson pointed out was the range of palatalized consonants in Russian, almost totally absent from ordinary English. These, he said, were "not unpleasant to our ears" and "relieve what might otherwise seem to be a harshness, a boominess, in Russian speech." And, indeed, these subtle varieties of sound give to Russian what is to many of us one of its peculiar charms.

So much for the attractions of the Russian language, its literature and the life it reflects. British students of it should always bear in mind that it has now become the common language of a great multi-national state, and the means of the spread of civilization to many obscure peoples who hardly more than sixty years ago had no written language at all.

Geographically speaking, Russian is spoken in Europe to the north and east of Byelorussia and the Ukraine in the greater part of the forest and plain regions of that area, and extends through the areas of other indigenous languages across Siberia to the Pacific Ocean. Towards Byelorussia and the Ukraine, Russian can be heard in many transitional dialects and variations. The words of folk songs from various districts and the description of Russian dialects in Dal's dictionary bear witness to this as regards the conditions obtaining during the last century, and despite modern movements of population and the influence of the wireless, etc., evidence of such transitions would hardly be disputed today.

Few monuments remain of the early form of the Russian language. It is partially preserved in early versions of laws and treaties and other documents (the so-called граммы) and to a lesser extent in the chronicles (летописи), unless we accept the authenticity of the "Lay of the host of Igor" (Слово о полку Игореве), which is a unique monument in the epic style commemorating a disastrous campaign by Prince Igor against the Pólovtsy in 1185 A.D. The text of this, however, must have been copied and recopied many times before the version, from which it was first printed in 1800, came into existence. Гудзий suggests that the original dates from the early XVIIc.

In contrast to this work, one can compare the elevated vocabulary and style of Metropolitan

Ilarion's eulogistic sermon entitled "Слово о законѣ и благодати" dating from the first half of the XIC. (1037-50). The language is strongly influenced in vocabulary, grammar and syntax by Church Slavonic. In beautiful rhetorical periods Ilarion praises the Russian Prince Vladimir who brought Christianity to Russia (Kievan Русь) in the 980's AD (982 or 984). His language is typical of the ecclesiastical literary language of Russia of the earliest period, i.e. XIC.:

"Вся страны, и грады, и людие чтуть и славять коегождо ихъ учителя, иже научиша православной Вѣрь. Похвалимъ же и мы, по силъ нашей, малыми похвалами -- великаа и дивнаа сътворшаго нашего учителя и наставника, великаго Кагана нашеа земля, Владимира, внука стараго Игоря, сына же славнаго Святослава, иже, въ своа лѣта владычествующа, мужествомъ же и храбрѣствомъ прослуша въ странахъ многахъ, и побѣдами и крѣпостію поминаются нынѣ и словуть. Не въ худѣ бо и не въ невѣдоми земли владычествоваша, но въ Русской, яже вѣдома и слышима есть всеми концы земля..."

Встани, о честнаа главо, отъ гроба твоего, встани, отряси сонь! Нѣси бо умерль, но спиши до обчаго всемъ встаніа. Встани, нѣси умерль, нѣсть бо ти льпо умерети, вѣровавшу въ Христа, живота всему міру. Отряси сонь, взведи очи..."

This style was used for hagiography (the lives of the Saints), eulogies of princes, descriptions of pilgrimages, sermons and so on for about four centuries. Here and there, in passages of a less elevated nature, in self-deprecatory asides and apologies, as in "The Pilgrimage of the Abbot Daniel" (to the Holy Land) (Хождѣние игумена Даниїла), a more colloquial Russian idiom reveals itself, a more personal style, doubtless nearer to the spoken language of the writer. There are many famous "monuments" from this period, such as the *Почуѣние Владїимира Мономаха* (which occurs in the chronicles), *Сказаніе о Борїсе и Глѣбе*, *Молѣние Даниїла Заточника*, etc.

After the fall of Constantinople in 1353 many scholars from Greece and the Balkans fled to safety in Russia. This led to a renewed wave of Church Slavonic influence, and a return to an orthography, a grammar and style of language, which was being gradually abandoned previously.

It was not until the XV and particularly the XVI centuries that the Russian element in the language really started to prevail and the Church Slavonic grammatical system began to break down.

In the "Journey of Afanásij Nikítin to India" (Хождѣние Афанásія Никїтина за три мѣся), 1466-1472, we get many samples of the personal language and views of an enterprising merchant of the city Tver', as well as a very interesting description of his journey and experiences in XVC. India, full of quotations in various Oriental languages, Old Uzbek (Chagatay), Arabic and Persian.

In the "Zadónščina" dating from the early XVC., we see the clear influence of the early Russian epics (The "Slóvo"). This work is a tribute to the Muscovite Prince Dmitri Ivánovič and his victory over the Tatars who were under the command of Mamáy at Kuliko-vo in 1380.

In the XVIC., in the famous correspondence between Iván the Dread and Prince Kúrbsky, who deserted to the West (Poland), we already see clearly the breakdown of the Church Slavonic influences in the literary language. The czar has already lost the feeling for the use of the old past tenses, Aorist and Imperfect, and obviously misuses them in mighty, rolling periods, impressive but difficult to read. Prince Kúrbsky's style shows better syntax and choice of language and is more polished.

Equally enlightening is the language of the "Домострбѣ", edited by the priest Silvester. This work is really a handbook on all aspects of running a household, administration, education and even cooking, and is not "literature". But as it deals with day-to-day life and domestic subjects, it is valuable for its revelation of the spoken language of Muscovy in the XVIC., as well as for its revealing views on a tough education, a strict supervision of servants, a cultivation of 'mind-your-own-business' and uncommunicativeness and its description of the preparation of many tasty dishes, -- all amusing to read.

In the XVII century the first clear influence of the West (Poland *via* the Ukraine) is revealed in the *Вѣрши* and Comedies of Simeon Pólotskiy; while in the autobiography of the persecuted Protoper Avvakúm we find a variety of styles according to the subject with which he is dealing. Church Slavonic influence is paramount only in his most elevated passages, while the descriptions of his misfortunes during his banishment (with his wife) in Siberia and his sufferings at the hands of his tormentor, Пашкѡв, are in a very vivid, colloquial language.

It was in the XVIII century that the first conscious efforts were made in Russia to abandon the Church Slavonic tradition. Church Slavonic had by then become more or less unintelligible and certainly foreign, even to educated people, let alone to the masses in Russia. Peter the Great himself at the beginning of the century not only reformed the alphabet, as already mentioned, but actively cultivated and advocated a concise, direct and businesslike style of writing, as his surviving letters reveal:

КЪ КНЯЗЮ АНИКИТЬ ИВАНОВИЧУ РЕПНИНУ

Нерр.

Сегодня получилъ я въдомость о Вашемъ толь худомъ поступкѣ, за что можете шею заплятати, ибо я чрезъ господина губернатора подь смертью не вельшь ничего в Ригу пропускать. Но ты пишешь, что Огилвиі тебѣ вельшь. Но я так пишу: хотя бѣ і ангель, не точию сей дерзновенникъ і досадитель вельшь бы, но тебѣ не довѣльло бы сего чинить. Впретъ же аше единая щепа пройдетъ, ей Богомъ кленусь, безъ головы будешь.

Piter.

С Москъвы, маія в 19 д. 1705.

Various writers, such as the poets (Prince) Kantemir, (Count) Sumarokov, and Trediakovskiy, made more or less conscious efforts to reform the literary language under Western influence. But it was not until the middle of the XVIIIc. that Mikhail Lomonosov, who had studied in Germany and was a scientist as well as a linguist and writer, produced his Grammar of the Russian language (Россійская Грамматика, 1755) and clearly laid down the norms for the literary (and spoken) language of educated Russians. He advocated the adoption of the Moscow dialect, with its characteristic pronunciation of the unstressed o as a, as the standard of pronunciation for literary Russian. He admitted many forms (e.g. the endings -ий, -уций) which were straight borrowings from Church Slavonic, as well as a certain amount of Church Slavonic vocabulary. He also laid down the famous "Doctrine of the Three Styles," by which--for odes, sermons and other elevated literature a language with a large Church Slavonic element was to be used, while for personal correspondence, 'low comedies', and satire this element was to be definitely eschewed and eliminated. Lyric poetry, and literary and scientific descriptions were to be written in a

'middle' style with sparing use of Church Slavonic elements, and it was this *middle* style, which finally gave birth to the modern literary language.

Later in the century Derzhavin used it in his poetry, and Karamzin used it for his 'History of Russia', and sentimental novels (such as Бѣдная Ліяа) written strongly under the influence of W. Europe, particularly France as far as the language is concerned.

The final 'crystalliser' of modern Russian is without any doubt Alexander Pushkin, who died in 1837 and wrote prose ("Капитанская дочь"), as well as poetry in a great variety of styles: lyrics, народныя "сказки" (folk tales in verse), Евргѣний Онѣгин (a novel in verse), Борис Годунов (a historical play, on the model of Shakespeare), etc. His language, although it is not absolutely modern (quite naturally), can be read without difficulty by Russians today. And he can speak to us direct, without any feeling of a barrier of style or intervening time which could make him foreign to our spirits and minds.

The XIXc. produced geniuses of world stature in Russia, whose names we all know: Gogol', Lermontov, Tyutchev, Fet, Dostoyevskiy, Tolstoy, Turgenev, Chékhov, for all of whom the Russian language presented no problem. It had become one with the people, no longer reserved for an inner coterie of aristocrats or clergy. It had become the instrument to express great, humanistic ideas which were to become the property and heritage of the whole world. Russian literature, more than that of any other Slavonic nation, is remarkable for the breadth and universality of its ideas, and it is this, above all, that has won for it and for the Russian language the recognition of the whole civilized world.

In historical times the earliest foreign influences were undoubtedly from the Greek of Byzantium through the strong cultural influence of the Orthodox Church and from Old Church Slavonic which was the liturgical language of this Church in Russia from earliest times. After the fall of Kiev to the Tatars in 1240 and during the two hundred and fifty or so years of the 'Tatar yoke' the influence of Tatar and other Asian languages was predominant and gave to Russian a new non-Slavonic vocabulary in many fields, such as government, weaponry, military life, clothing, and even domestic life. For example, the Russian word for horse, лошадь, is from the Tatar *alaga*. Much later, in the XVIIc. the influence of Western Europe began to be felt in the language--at first from Poland via the Ukraine, and under the influence

"hard" or without palatalization (i.e. "ordinary," approximately as in English), or alternatively "soft" or with palatalization when this is indicated by the letter *ь* following, or by a subsequent "palatalizing" vowel, that is, by *я, е, и, ё* or *ю*, with the important exception of the consonants *ц, ж, and ш*, now always hard in Russian, and *ч* and *щ* now always palatalized or "soft,"² e.g.:—

мат	=	checkmate	мать	=	mother
пел	=	sang	трель	=	trill
ваза	=	vase	ви́за	=	visa
как	=	how	ки́т	=	whale
ос	=	of wasps	ось	=	axle
мор	=	plague	мо́ре	=	sea.

Initially these soft vowels, except *и*, are pronounced with a full *j* (yot) sound preceding. *и* used to be pronounced *jí* only in the cases of the 3rd person pronoun: *им, их, йми*. Parallel to the palatalizing vowels there exists the series of corresponding ordinary, non-palatalizing vowels, viz.:—*а, э, ы, о* and *у* as in the words: *да* (= yes), *сто́р* (= this), *мы* (= we), *ко́т* (= tom-cat), *ум* (= mind).

а and *у* are pronounced rather like *a* and *u* respectively in Italian or German.

э under stress before a hard consonant really sounds like English "ear," but before a soft consonant it is a very close *e*, like the first *e* in German "sehen" (so also *e* interpalatally), e.g. *эри, 'et, i* (= these) as opposed to *сто́р, 'e'tat* (= this, masc.).

ы, written *ѣ* in phonetic script, could be described roughly as a centralized *i* pronounced by

¹Palatalization means the pronunciation of a sound with the addition of palatal resonance, obtained by approaching the end of the tongue to the front of the roof of the mouth or palate. This narrows the passage used for articulation and gives that peculiar "soft" or high-pitched quality. Neighbouring vowels are modified, i.e. closed or "narrowed down" to harmonize. There are really no "soft" vowels.

²One would expect that after hard *ц, ж, and ш* no palatalizing vowel would be written and correspondingly that after soft *ч* and *щ* no ordinary vowel would be written. However, *я* and *ю* are not written after any of these five consonants, though heard after the palatal *ч* and *щ*. Similarly, *э* and *ы* are not written after any of them, though in this case, of course, *ы* is heard after the hard *ц, ж, and ш* when *и* is written, e.g. *црк* (= circus). Also, *э* does not occur after *ч*, and *о* is not written after *щ*, though they are heard, as in *центр* (= centre), *ещё* (= still).

raising the tongue high towards the middle of the palate.

о under stress is preceded by a slight *у* or lip-rounding.

Diphthongs with *й* can be formed with all the above vowels except the [ɛ] sound of *сто́р* and *пел*, e.g.: *дай* (= give!), *пей* (= drink!), *кий* (= cue), *бой* (= battle), *дуй* (= blow!), *мйлый* (= dear), *земле́й* (= with earth), *негодя́й* (= scoundrel), *дую́м* (= inch).

From the above it can be inferred that the Russian spelling makes a fair bid to be phonetic and at the same time reflects the close interdependence of consonant resonance and vowel quality. The Cyrillic alphabet as originally applied to Old Slavonic was doubtless more exact and successful, and with the phonetic and regional developments of Russian, deviations and changes were bound to occur. One of the most important factors for these deviations from true phonetic representation came to be the fact that unstressed vowels became modified and less clear, the word-stress itself shifting and not being fixed.

Modification of Unstressed Vowels (*ákanie, íkante*)

All vowels and also diphthongs in unstressed syllables, and even unemphasized words such as *he* (= not), are modified or "toned down." English has a similar process, such as can be heard in the Southern English pronunciation of "contamination," "about," "gentleman."

Unstressed *у* and *ы* preserve their essential quality, as in *уха́* (= fish soup), *во́ды* (= waters), *уйди́* (= go away!), *до́бры́й* (= kind). But unstressed *а* and *о* are both pronounced "a" (phonetic *ʌ*) in the pretonic syllable, as in *мо́сто́в* (= of bridges), *сады́* (= gardens), *во́йна́* (= war), but in all other positions are both reduced to the neutral vowel, rendered in phonetics *ə*, e.g. *сто́р* (= this), *хо́рошо́* (= good), *ло́шадь* (= horse), *захо́дять* (= go round, set), *облако́* (= cloud), *ку́шайте* (= eat!), *ма́ло́й* (= small, Gen. fem. sing.).

Unstressed *э* is pronounced *ɪ* or like *ɪ* in Eng. "bit," e.g. *электри́чество* (= electricity), *аэроплáн* (= aeroplane), *эне́ргия* (= energy). After *ч*, *а* is also reduced to *ɪ* when not stressed, e.g. *часы́ тjí: 'вч* (= watch).

Similarly the palatalizing or "soft" vowels *е, и*, and even *я* non-finally are reduced to *ɪ* with the preceding consonant palatalized, in *all* unstressed syllables, e.g. *зимá* (= winter), *вездé* (= everywhere) *сы́ний* (= blue), *кла́дей* (= of loads), *язы́к* (= tongue).

But finally я is reduced to the neutral vowel e with the preceding consonant palatalized: БѢНЯ 'vape (Johnny). Ё, ѐ, and ѣ never occur in unstressed syllables in literary Russian. Unstressed ю can also be reduced to i, as in СѢНЮЮ 'sɨn'ju (= blue, Acc. Sing. fem.).

The rebirth in Russian of the neutral vowel, still totally absent from standard Ukrainian, Polish, Czech, Slovak, Serbo-croatian and literary Macedonian, is an interesting parallel to the vowel system of Old Slavonic. Originally the letter ъ was invented expressly to represent this sound which subsequently became mute. It is also known to Slovenian and modern Bulgarian in which it can occur even under stress.

RUSSIAN DIALECTS

Russian dialects are divided into three main groups: the Northern, the Southern, and the Central. The Central dialects are a blend of the Northern and Southern dialects in various proportions and are relatively recently formed. They stretch in a narrow belt between the territories of the Northern and Southern dialects, running from north-west to south-east across European Russia. Their territory extends from Pskov to round Kalinin and Moscow, a little north of Ryazán to Péenza and just short of Sarátov on the Volga. To the north-east of this area and over most of Russian-speaking Siberia lies the territory of the Northern dialects. The Southern dialects stretch south-west of the Central region up to the boundaries of the Byelorussian and Ukrainian-speaking areas, but starting in the north only just south of Rzhhev. That means that north-west of this point up to Pskov the Central dialects border directly on Byelorussian territory and by some are here classified as a separate subdivision of the Central region. South of Bryansk and north of it up to near Rzhhev there is also another transitional region—between the Byelorussian and the Southern Russian dialect areas. In the south-east the Southern Russian dialect area borders on the Kazakh and Kalmyk territories round the lower Volga and reaches in a narrow tongue to the Caucasus south of Stavrópol' and Dzau-džikau on the Terek.

The main features peculiar to Northern Russian dialects are:—

1. Absence of *akanie*, i.e. the distinguishing of o and a in unstressed position—pretonically in all sub-dialects, e.g.:—

водá = water, pron. vo'da
травá = grass, " tra'va

2. The distinguishing of pretonic я, e derived from e, and e derived from ъ, or partially doing so, or else pronouncing them all as 'e, e.g.:—

тяnú = I pull несý = I carry
в лесý (<лѣсу) = in the wood рекá (<рѣка) = river

pron.	ja'nu	jo'su	v	le'su	ro'ka
or pron.	ja'nu	jo'su			re'ka
"	ja'nu	je'su			re'ka
"	je'nu	jo'su			ro'ka
"	je'nu	je'su			re'ka (with
"	je'nu	je'su			'e throughout)

It will be observed that in some cases we thus have unstressed ё, a feature unknown in literary Russian.

3. Plosive r, e.g.:—

гром = thunder, pron. grom
ропá = hill, " go'ra

4. Loss of intervocalic j and subsequent vowel contractions e.g.:—

знáет pron. знаёт > знаат > знат = he knows
умёт for умéет = he knows how to
моет " мóет = he washes
дúмыт " дýмают = they think
стáра " стáрая = old

5. Acc./Gen. sing. of Reflexive and Personal Pronouns in -я, e.g.:—

себá = self
менá = me
тебá = you (sg.)

6. Hard final -т in 3rd pers. sing. and plur. Present, e.g.:—

несёт = he carries
ведёт = they lead

The following features are common to the majority of North Russian subdialects:—

7. Stressed interpalatal 'a (я) become 'e, e.g.:—
грязь = dirt, pron. грязь, but грязный = dirty,
опять = again, for опять pron. with я.

8. Confusion of ц and ч, pronouncing both either as ц, or as a soft ц, or else as Polish *chuintante* џ [tɕ], or again as ч [tʃ], e.g.: in улица (=street), хочѹ (=I want).

9. Use of the sound f (ф), e.g.:—

сарафан = sarafan
фунт = pound
торф = peat

10. Simplification of -ДН- to long н, e.g.:—

оно for одно = one (neut.)

11. Simplification of -бм- to long м, e.g.:—

обман for обман = deceit

12. Changing вн- to мн-, e.g.:—

мнук for внук = grandson
давно for давно = long ago

13. Soft -с-, in the endings -ск-, -ств-, e.g.:—

руської = Russian
богачство = riches, for богатство

14. Instr. plur. ending -м for literary Russian -ми, thus confusing Dat. with Instr. plur., e.g.:—

своим глазам видел = he saw it with his own eyes,
for своими глазами...

Forms in -мы, -ма and -мя are also used. The last two for Dat. plur. as well.

15. Velar stem verbs of Class I (see under "The Conjugation of Verbs—Voices and Tenses" in "Morphology") have Infin. in -(к)чи, e.g.:—

пе(к)чи = to bake
мо(к)чи = to be able

16. Postpositive article, as in Bulgarian and Macedonian, but declinable, e.g.:—

дом-от = the house
избага = the cottage, Acc. избѹту, Acc. pl. избѹте
сѣлово = the village

Some Northern dialects have Comparative adverbs in -яе, e.g.:—

скоряе = quicker

The Northern dialects also have peculiarities of accent, syntax and vocabulary.

The Southern Russian dialects have the following peculiarities not known to the Northern group, while in other respects, such as in the instances above, Nos. 7-16 (except No. 9), they agree with literary Russian:—

1. *akanie*, i.e. pronouncing unstressed а and о both as various shades of а, e.g.:

ва'да for вода (= water), like тра'ва for трава (= grass)

2. *jakanie* or *ikanie*, i.e. not distinguishing я and е when unstressed and pronouncing both either as я or as и; in some subdialects the choice depends on the surrounding consonants. The usage varies in the various subdialects:—

весна = spring, pron. вясна or висна
e.g. with dissimilative *jakanie*:—

Gen. sg. весна́ pron. вясна́

Dat. sg. весне́ pron. висне́ (Nom. sing. висна́)

3. Fricative г, phon. ɣ or ɦ, e.g.:—

гром for гром = thunder
га'ра for гора = hill

4. Acc./Gen. sg. of Reflexive and Personal Pronouns in -е, e.g.:—

себе́ = self, (pron. сябе́ or сибѣ)
мене́ = me
тебе́ = you (sing.)

5. Soft final -ть in 3rd pers. sing. and plur. Present, e.g.:—

несѣть = he carries
вядѹть = they lead

6. Substitution of х or хв for ф, e.g.:—

сарафан = sarafan, pron. сѣра'xfan
хвунт = pound
торх = peat

7. Some Southern dialects change final в and л to ѹ, e.g.:—

давно́ = long ago, pron. даѹ'но
был = was, pron. биѹ

8. Soft pronunciation of *к* after soft consonants and *ж* (*й*), e.g.:—

бóчка = barrel, for *бóчка*
чáйку = gull, Acc. sing., for *чáйку*

9. Hard pronunciation of *щ*, *жд* as hard long *ш* and *ж* respectively, e.g.:—

пíчка for *щúка* = pike
дажá for *дождá* = rain, Gen. sing.

10. Loc. sing. in *-у* for masc. nouns with fixed accent and for some neuter, e.g.:—

на концú = on the end
у пóлю = in the field

11. Instr. sing. in *-уй* or *-юй* for soft fem. *i*-stems, e.g.:—

ночúй or нóчьюй = by night, for нóчью
also in *-ай*, e.g.:—

ночáй

12. Nom. plur. in *-а* or *-я* for fem. nouns, e.g.:—

степá or степá = steppes
деревнá = villages

13. Acc. sing. fem. of adjectives—in *-ю* or, if unstressed, *-аю*, and for soft stems in *-ию*, e.g.:—

плахúя = bad
стáраю = old
снúю = blue

14. Gen./Acc. sing. fem. of pronouns, with final *-é*, e.g.:—

еé = her, маé = my

15. Stressed *e* not changed to *ë* in 2nd, 3rd pers. sing. and 1st and 2nd pers. plur. Present of verbs, e.g.:—

несéш = you carry (sing.)
несéте = you carry (plur.)

The Southern dialects also have peculiarities of accent.

Some Southern dialects have lost the neuter gender; one hears:—

моé ведрб for моé ведрб = my rail
свёжей мáсла " свёжее мáсло = fresh butter

Some Southern dialects have also lost the short, predicative form of the adjectives.

Some Central dialects have soft *т*, *д* for soft *к*, *г* respectively, e.g.:—

рúти for рúки = hands
ноди " нóги = legs

The Northern and Southern dialect regions are further subdivided thus:—

The Northern dialect falls into five main sub-dialects:

1. The Far Northern sub-dialects spoken round the White Sea and the Lower Pechóra river.
2. The Olonéts sub-dialect, spoken east of Lake Onéga.
3. The Western sub-dialect, spoken round Leningrad and Nóvgorod.
4. The Eastern sub-dialect, spoken in N.E. Russia, Vólogda, Kírov, etc.
5. The South-Eastern Vladimir-Volga sub-dialect, stretching from north of Kalinin and Yaroslávl' to Urál'sk and Chkál'ov.

The Southern dialect has three sub-divisions—

1. Dialects with dissimilative *jákanie*, spoken round Orël and Kursk and on the Don and in the "tongue" reaching to the Caucasus.
2. Dialects with moderate *jákanie*, spoken round Kalúga and Túla.
3. Dialects with strong *jákanie*, spoken round Ryazáń, Tambóv, Vorónezh, and south-east of them up to Volgograd and also round Kúibyshev.

It is important to note that modern literary Russian is founded on the speech of Moscow which lies in the Central, "compromise" region and uses Southern Russian vowels (i.e. with *akanie*, pronouncing unstressed *o* as various kinds of *a*, and also *ikanie*), but Northern Russian consonants, e.g. plosive *g* (e.g. *ropa* pronounced *ga'ra*) and *f*. Literary Russian is, therefore, a suitable unifying medium for all Russian speaking areas. The Moscow pronunciation has long been copied in all other Russian cultural centres, including Leningrad. But in some ways Leningrad pronunciation is nearer the spelling, e.g.:—

ру́сский	Мосcow pron.	'ruskəj
конéчно	Leningrad pron.	'ruskij
	Мосcow pron.	ka'neʃne
	Leningrad pron.	ka'neʃne,
etc.		

5. Epenthetic *н*:—

внимáть = to listen to
 принáть = to accept
 but:
 объáтие = embrace

Prothetic *в*:

вóчина = patrimony,
 cf. отéц = father
 вóсемь = eight

It is also used in the oblique cases of the 3rd person Personal Pronoun after prepositions which govern the pronoun: e.g. емú = to him (Dat.), but к немú = to (wards) him; йми = with them (Inst.), but с нými = (in company) with them.

FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF RUSSIAN

Those marked * are not shared with Ukrainian and Byelorussian.¹

1. In words which in O.S. contained a number of consecutive syllables with semi-vowels (either *ь* or *ъ*), the final and the prepenultimate one regularly disappeared (*ь* leaving a palatalization of the consonant), while the penultimate one developed into a full vowel: *ь* into *о*, and *ъ* into *е*, compare e.g.:—

Аньсь, днесъ = to-day мъхъ, мох = moss
 (archaic) сѣто, сто = hundred
 снъ, сон = sleep
 крѣвь, кровь = blood слезá, слезá = tear
 (C.S. Acc. s. крѣвьъ) (C.S. slъza)

2. The nasal vowels *я* and *я* developed into *я* and *у* respectively, compare e.g.:—

сѣмѧ, сѣмѧ = seed пѧть, пѧть = way
 пѧть, пѧть = five жѧнѧ, жѧнѧ = wife (Acc. sing.)

3. "Polnoglasie"—полногласие: this is the Russian name for the feature alluded to in the section on Metathesis p. 48. Taking *т* to represent any consonant, the rule can be concisely summarized as follows: medially the common Slav syllables tert, telt, tort, tolt (in O.S. трѣт, тѣт, трат, тлат by metathesis and vowel lengthening) develop in Russian into терет, (телет or) толот, торот, толот, e.g.:—

Cf. O.S. брѣгъ, R. бѣрег = coast
 O.S. млѣко, R. молоко = milk
 O.S. градъ, R. город = town
 O.S. млѧдъ, R. млод = young

¹ For features characteristic of all three East Slavonic

The O.S. forms, such as град (= city), глаvá (= chief, chapter), which coexist in modern literary Russian, side by side with the true Russian forms град (= town), головá (= head), are loan-words from the church language comparable to Latin or Norman/Anglo-Saxon pairs of equivalents in English: mutton, sheep; beef, bull; chant, song; or, for doublets in English of Romance origin: guarantee, warrant; domain, domain.

4. ж (from *dj*) where O.S. has жд: (O.S. loan forms coexist, here and in 5):

урожáй = harvest but: рождѣние = birth
 ч (from *tj* and *ktj*) where O.S. has щ:—

горячий (= hot)—the true Russian form; ночь = night
 горящий (= burning)—O.S. ending borrowed

5. ѣ where O.S. has е:—

нёбо = palate cf. R. нёбо = heaven
 падѣж = cattle-plague cf. R. падѣж = (grammatical) case

6.* The pronunciation of the masc. and neut. Gen. sing. ending of adjectives and pronouns as *о*ѣ, *е*ѣ, *и*ѣ:—

молодѣго = of...young, pron. мѣлѣго
 бѣлого = of white, pron. бѣлѣго
 сѣнего = of blue, pron. сѣнѣго

7. Initial *je* changes to *о* in Russian, e.g.:—

cf. O.S. ѡанъ, R. одѣн = one
 O.S. ѡзеро, R. озеро = lake

8. *о* and *е* or *ѣ* are the Russian fill-vowels in cases of consonantal agglomerations:—

бкон = of windows
 надо мнѣй = above me
 but also—

землѧ (= earth), Gen. plur. земѣль;
 сестрѧ (= sister), Gen. plur. сестѣр.

9.* ч, щ soft:—

чай = tea щѣка = pike
 ночь = night помѣчь = help

10. The palatal pronunciation of *р* in *рь*, *ре*, *ря*, etc., also partly in Ukrainian (only):—

зверь = wild beast
 море = sea, Gen. sing. моря

11.* The change of *ы* to *о* and *и* to *е* before *ј*:—
 Languages, see p. 117 and pp. 199-200.

мыть = to wash мью = I wash
 брить = to shave, брею = I shave

12. Common Slav hard vocalic ξ and soft vocalic ζ both become ол in Russian:—

долг = debt (<дъг-), cf. Polish dług
 молчать = to be silent (<мьѣѣ-), cf. Polish milczeć
 Common Slav hard vocalic ξ gives оп, but soft vocalic ζ gives ер:—

торг = bargaining (<търг-), cf. Polish targ
 первый = first (<първ-), cf. Polish pierwszy

13. Akanye, i.e. the pronunciation of unstressed o as a (see section on the modification of unstressed vowels above), also in Byelorussian:—

бородá (= beard), pronounced as берадá, берá'да.

For other important features shared with Byelorussian, see p. 196.

14.* Soft final -нь, -бь[p], -фь, -вь[f], e.g.
 топь = swamp, голубь = pigeon;
 верфь = shipyard, dock, кровь = blood.

MORPHOLOGICAL CHARACTERISTICS

15. The Acc. plur. of animate nouns, masc., fem. and neut., is the same in form as the Gen. plur. (by analogy with the masc. Acc. sing.):

жёнцин = (of) women утáт = (of) ducklings
 олéней = (of) stags

16.* Nom. pl. of masc. nouns in -á, -á:

городá = towns

учителá = teachers, as well as учителя

17. Frequent use of the ending -ей for the Gen. pl. of nouns:

костéй = of bones царéй = of czars
 олéней = of stags морéй = of seas

18. Preservation of the dissyllabic adjectival endings in the Nom. sing. fem. and neut., and Nom. plur. (used for definite adjs. in O.S.), cf. Byelorussian:
 бéлая, бéлое, бéлые = white

19.* Stressed adjectival ending in Nom. sing. masc. in -ой:
 молодóй = young

20. Stressed or unstressed ending -ой for Gen.,

Dat., Instr. and Loc. sing. fem. of hard adjectives;
 бéлой = of...white; молодóй = of...young;
 and -ей for soft stem adjectives:

сíней = of...blue.

21.* The loss of наи- as sign of the Superlative degree of an adjective.

22.* Final т(ь) in the 3rd pers. sing. and plur. of the Present tense:

несёт, несёт = he carries, they carry

Modern Bulgarian and Macedonian share this feature for the plural.

23.* ть for the ending of the Infinitive:—

дéлать = to do

24.* -щий, etc., for the ending of the Present Participle Active in the literary language:—

несúщий = (who is) carrying

видяúщий = (who is) seeing

25.* The preservation of the Present Participle Passive:—

ведóмый = (who is being) lead

гонимый = (who is being) pursued

(книга) чита́емая = a book (which is being) read...

But: сравн́имый = comparable; знаком́ый = familiar; etc.

A BRIEF SUMMARY OF RUSSIAN MORPHOLOGY

DECLENSION OF NOUNS

Owing to the loss of the O.S. \bar{u} -stem and \bar{y} -stem declensions¹ there are only four main declensions in Russian, the o-stems being sub-divided into masculine and neuter.

The three genders are retained; but the Dual number has disappeared as a regular grammatical feature, as has also the Vocative case. There are therefore two numbers, singular and plural, and six cases—Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Instrumental, and Locative. (This is the usual order

¹ \bar{u} -stems have all changed their declension, e.g.:—

цérковь (= church), like ко́сть.

смóква (= fig), like жéнщина.

\bar{y} -stems as such also no longer exist, but have left traces of their case endings in the masc. o-stems.

for Russian.)

1. *i*-stems. (The masculine *i*-stems have disappeared, путь (= way) now counting as irregular: G. D. L. sing. пути, I. sing. путем.) Feminine only.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	кость	кости
Gen.	кости	костей
Dat.	кости	костям
Acc.	кость	кости
Instr.	костьюю	костями
Loc.	кости	костях

кость = bone

but from лошадь—

Acc. pl. лошадей (= horses) (= Gen. for animate nouns, as in masc.)

Instr. pl. лошадыми (original ending)

2. Consonant stems, with *-n-* only. Ten neuters only, including имя = name.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	время	временя
Gen.	времени	времен
Dat.	времени	временам
Acc.	время	временя
Instr.	временем	временами
Loc.	времени	временях

время = time

3. *a*-stems, mostly feminine. In Russian the endings of the hard *a*-stems, as opposed to the soft *ja*-stems, have predominated and become generalized. The modern soft declension has the same or the corresponding vowel sounds as endings, preceded by *j*, hence they are written -и, -ю, -ей, -ям, etc., for -ы, -у, -ой, -ой, ам respectively.

женщина = woman; земля = earth; армия = army

	<i>Hard</i>	<i>Soft</i>
Nom.	женщина	земля
Gen.	женщины	земли
Dat.	женщине	земле
Acc.	женщину	землю
Instr.	женщиной (-ою)	землей
Loc.	женщине	земле

армия
армии
армии
армию
армией
армии

Plur. Hard Soft

Nom.	женщины	земли	армии
Gen.	женщин	земель	армий
Dat.	женщинам	землям	армиям
Acc.	женщин (-ы for inanim. as in masc.)	земли	армии
Instr.	женщинами	землями	армиями
Loc.	женщинах	землях	армиях

Masculine nouns in -а are declined regularly: e.g.

слуга = servant, юноша = a youth

4. (*a*) Masculine *o*-stems. Here, too, the original hard stem endings have become generalized, as is proved in the Acc. plur. As in the *a*-stems, the soft *o* declension is merely the hard *o* declension with *j* preceding the endings, changing -о- to -е-.

стол = table олень = deer

Sing. *Plur.*

Nom.	стол	олень	столы	олени
Gen.	стола	олени	столов	олений
Dat.	столу	оленью	столам	оленьям
Acc.	стол	оленья	столы	олений*
		(inanimate)		
Instr.	столом	оленем	столами	оленьями
Loc.	столё	олёне	столах	оленьях

*But: трамваи = trams, (inanimate) from трамвай, Gen. pl. трамваев.

Like the above, but with a 'fleeting' vowel in the stem:

отец = father, Gen. s. отец
сон = sleep, dream, Gen. s. сна
день = day, Gen. s. дня

Examples of the influence of the *й*-stems:—

фунт чаю—(partitive Gen.) = pound of tea
в саду, лесу—(Loc. s.) = in the garden, wood

Traces of old *й*-stems can also be seen in:—

сын (= son), Nom. plur. сыновья

as well as in the widely used Gen. plur. ending -ов: e.g. столов.

Survival of the Dual endings, now often unexpressedly extended:—

глаза = eyes город = towns
берега = banks (of a river) докторы = doctors

Survival of collective plur. in *-ja*:

брат = brother, Nom. plur. братья
cf. Serbo-cr. браћа.
друг = friend, Nom. plur. друзья
князь = prince, " " князья
муж = husband, " " мужья
стул = chair, " " стулья, etc.

Nouns in *-(н)ин* have Nom. pl. in *-(н)е*: гражда-
нин = citizen, N. pl. граждане, Gen. Acc. pl. гражд-
дан.

4. (*b*) Neuter *o*-stems. Here too the hard stem
endings have predominated, as is shown in the ending
for the Loc. sing. море.

село = village; море = sea; здание = building

	<i>Sing.</i>	soft
hard		
Nom.	село	здáние
Gen.	села	здáния
Dat.	селу	здáнию
Acc.	село	здáние
Instr.	селом	здáнием
Loc.	селе	здáнии

	<i>Plur.</i>	
Nom.	села	здáния
Gen.	сел	здáний
Dat.	сёлам	здáниям
Acc.	села	здáния
Instr.	сёлами	здáниями
Loc.	сёлах	здáниях

Survival of Dual endings:—

уши	= ears,	Gen. pl. ушей	(Nom. s. ухо)
плечи	= shoulders,	" "	плечей (" " плечó)
колéни	= knees,	" "	колéней (" " колéно)
бóчи (poet.)	= eyes,	" "	оцéй (" " óко)
яблоки	= apples,	" "	яблок (" " яблоко)

Note: нéбо = sky, has plur. небеса́ (from consonantal
decl.); чудó = a marvel, miracle, has plur. чудеса́,

The masc. ребёнок (= child), цыплёнок (= chick-
en), котёнок (= kitten), утёнок (= duckling), etc.,
have plurals ребята́, цыплята́, котята́, утята́ also from
the consonantal decl. As they indicate animate be-
ings, their Acc. plur. is the same as their Gen.
plur.: ребята́, цыплята́, котята́, утята́, etc. Note the
spelling after ш: мышóнок (= baby mouse), N. pl.
мышата́, A., G. pl. мышат.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES—see below

There are no indefinite adjectives or partici-
ples declined like nouns in Russian.

NUMERALS

Cardinal

1 is declined and treated like an adjective.
2, 3, and 4 govern the Gen. sing.
5 onwards govern the Gen. plur.

From 2 onwards the Acc. is the same as the Nom.
5 onwards all decline in the same way, up to 90 (and
except 40).

2, 3, and 4 govern a noun in the Gen. sing. with
the qualifying adjective in Nom. or Gen. plur.,
e.g.:—

два белые́е or белые́х столá = two white tables.

but in the oblique cases numeral, adjective, and noun
agree in the case demanded by the sentence, e.g.:—
трём се́рым ослáм = to three grey asses.

1	один, одна́, одно́ (declined like сто́т, see p. 60)	два (masc. and neut.),	Gen./Loc.	два	два	два
2	две (fem.)	двух	двум	двум	двум	двумя
3	три	трёх	трьём	трьём	трьём	тремя́
4	четыре	четырёх	четырёх	четырёх	четырёх	четырьмя́
5	пять	пяти́	пяти́	пяти́	пяти́	пятью́
6	шесть					
7	семь					
8	восемь					
9	девятъ					
10	десять					
11	одинна́дцать					
12	двена́дцать					
13	трина́дцать					
14	четы́рнадцать					
15	пятна́дцать					
16	шестна́дцать					
17	семна́дцать					
18	восемна́дцать					
19	девятна́дцать					
20	два́дцать					
21	два́дцать	один				
30	три́дцать					
40	соро́к					
50	пятьдеся́т					
60	шестьдеся́т					

Gen.

сорока́
пятидеся́ти

70	сѣмьдесят	
80	восьмьдесят	
90	дев'яноста	Gen.
100	сто	дев'яноста
200	двѣсти	ста
300	трѣста	двухсот
400	четырѣста	трѣхсот
500	пятьсот	четырёхсот
600	шестьсот	пятисот
1,000	тысяча	
2,000	две тысячи	
5,000	пять тысяч	
1,000,000	миллион	миллион

The *Ordinal Numerals* пѣрвый, второй, трѣтій = first, second, third, etc. are declined like adjectives—see below. In compound Ordinals only the last figure is ordinal, e.g.:—

100th = сотый, but 101st = сто пѣрвый.

Notice the use of the Genitive form in the first half of the (compound) upper tens and the hundreds, e.g.:—

пятидеся́тый = fiftieth, etc.

1st	пѣрвый, пѣрвая, пѣрвое
2nd	второй, вторая, второе
3rd	трѣтій, трѣтая, трѣтье
4th	четыре́тый, etc.
5th	пя́тый,
6th	шесть
7th	се́дмь
8th	восемь
9th	девя́тый
10th	деся́тый
11th	о́дннадцатый
12th	двѣнадцатый
13th	тринадцатый
14th	четы́рнадцатый
15th	пятна́дцатый
16th	шестна́дцатый
17th	семна́дцатый
18th	восемна́дцатый
19th	дв'ятна́дцатый
20th	двадц'атый
21st	двадц'ать пѣрвый, etc.
30th	тридц'атый
40th	сороков'ый
50th	пятидеся́тый

60th	шестидеся́тый	
70th	семидеся́тый	
80th	восемьдеся́тый	
90th	дев'яно́стый	
100th	со́тый 101st	сто пѣрвый, etc.
200th	двухсо́тый	
300th	трѣхсо́тый	
400th	четыре́хсо́тый	
500th	пятисо́тый	
600th	шестисо́тый, etc.	
	ты́сячный	
1,000th	двухты́сячный	
2,000th	пяти́ты́сячный	
5,000th	милио́нный	
1,000,000th		

Collective Numerals: Special forms exist for the numbers 2-10, and are used with pronouns and nouns of mixed gender thought of as a group, and also with adjectives used as nouns and pluralia tantum. They are followed by the noun in the Gen. pl. and a verb in the (neuter) singular or in the plural.

2	двѣ	6	ше́стеро
3	трѣ	7	се́меро
4	четы́ре	8	восьме́ро
5	пя́теро	9	девя́теро
		10	деся́теро

Нас было	трѣ	=	There were	three of us
У меня	двѣ дете́й	=	I have	two children
Пя́теро	больных	=	Five	sick people
у него́	двѣ часо́в	=	He has	two watches
				have come

Notice: пол-половина } + Gen. = half

полтора́ (masc. and neut.) } + Gen. = one and a half
 полтора́ (fem.) }
 oblique cases (all genders): полутора followed
 by the case required
 два (etc.) с полови́ной = two (etc.) and a half

Distributive Numerals are formed with по + Acc. for the numerals 2, 3, 4, 40, 90 and 100: по два рублё́ = two roubles each; but for all other numbers по takes the Dative: по пяти́ рублё́й = five roubles each.

Instr.	самѣм	самѡй	им ¹ (НИМ) ²	ей (ней, ² ею, нею) ²
Loc.	самѡм	самѡй	нѣм	ней
PLUR.	Masc., Neut. and Fem.	Masc., Neut. and Fem.		
Nom.	самѣи		онѣ	
Gen.	самѣих		их ¹ (НИХ) ²	
Dat.	самѣим		им ¹ (НИМ)	
Acc.	=Nom./Gen.		их ¹ (НИХ)	
Instr.	самѣими		ѣми ¹ (НИМИ)	
Loc.	самѣих		НИХ	

Я = I, мы = we, ты = thou, вы = you, себя = self

Nom.	Я	мы	ты	вы	—
Gen.	меня	нас	тебѣ	вас	себѣ
Dat.	мнѣ	нам	тебѣ	вам	себѣ
Acc.	меня	нас	тебѣ	вас	себѣ
Instr.	мною	нами	тобѣй	вами	собѣй
Loc.	мнѣ	нас	тебѣ	вас	себѣ

ADJECTIVES

The Declension of Adjectives

Many adjectives in Russian have two forms—the predicative with short (monosyllabic) ending and the attributive with long (disyllabic) ending in the Nom. The former are used only in the Nom. case in modern colloquial and literary Russian and vary only in gender and number; they are formed only from descriptive adjectives, e.g.—

Он здоров	= he is well.
Она здорова	= she is well.
Это дешево	= This is cheap.
Они молоды	= They are young.

The declension of the attributive adjective was originally compound, consisting of a combination of the noun declension with the 3rd person pronoun declension suffixed. The endings underwent contraction, the final result being, not unexpectedly, similar to the pronominal declension. As in the pronouns, the *r* in the ending -ro of the Gen. sing. masc. and neut. is pronounced [v].

The declension of the attributive adjective

¹Pronounced formerly: jim, jix, 'jim'i.

²The forms with initial *n* are used after governing prepositions.

falls into four subdivisions:—

1. hard stems not finally stressed, e.g. здоровый.
2. hard stems finally stressed, e.g. молодой.
3. velar stems (not finally stressed), e.g. великий.
4. soft and hush-sibilant (Fr. *chuintante*) stems, e.g. сѣний, хорбшій.

SING.	1. здоровый = healthy	
Nom.	Masc. здоровый	Fem. PLUR. All Genders. здоровая
Gen.	здорового	здоровой
Dat.	здоровому	здоровой
Add.	=Nom./Gen. здоровому	=Nom./Gen. здоровой
Instr.	здоровым	здоровыми
Loc.	здоровом	здоровых

SING.	2. молодой = young	
Nom.	Masc. молодой	Fem. PLUR. All Genders. молодая
Gen.	молодого	молодой
Dat.	молодому	молодой
Acc.	=Nom./Gen. молодому	молодую
Instr.	молодым	молодыми
Loc.	молодом	молодых

(These endings are spelt identically as in class 1, but are pronounced with the stress on the first syllable of the ending.)

SING.	3. великий = great	
Nom.	Masc. великий	Fem. PLUR. All Genders. великая
Gen.	великого	великой
Dat.	великому	великой
Acc.	=Nom./Gen. великому	великую
Instr.	великим	великими
Loc.	великом	великих

(This declension is also identical except for the fact that *n* never occurs after a velar in Russian, *n* being used instead.)

N.B. The pronouns *каждый* (= each), *какой* (= which), *какой* (= such), *какой* (= of what kind), *всякий* (= every), are declined on the above models.

¹As in the nouns, Acc. sing. masc. and all Acc. plurals = Gen. for animates, and = Nom. for inanimates.

4. Soft stems: синий = blue, рѣбий = fish('s), belonging to fish.

SING.	<i>Masc.</i>	синий	PLUR. All Genders.
Nom.	<i>Neut. Fem.</i>	синее	
Gen.		синего	синие
Dat.		синему	синих
Acc.	=Nom./Gen.	синее	синим
Instr.	синим	синей	=Nom./Gen.
Loc.	синем	синей	синими
			синих

Nom.	рѣбий	рѣбье	рѣбья	рѣбьи
Gen.	рѣбьего	рѣбьей	рѣбьей	рѣбьих
Dat.	рѣбьему	рѣбьей	рѣбьей	рѣбьим
Acc.	=Nom./Gen.	рѣбье	рѣбью	=Nom./Gen.
Instr.	рѣбьим	рѣбьей	рѣбьей	рѣбьими
Loc.	рѣбьем	рѣбьей	рѣбьей	рѣбьих

(It will be noticed that, except in the Nom. and Acc., the endings of рѣбий are identical with those of синий, with the addition of a preceding в.)

The *chuintante* stems in ш, ж, ч, щ, if not finally stressed, are declined like синий except in the Nom. and Acc. sing. fem. which end in -ая and -ую, e.g. хорбшая, хорбшую (= good).

There are few corresponding predicative forms for the adjectives with soft endings:—

хорбш, хорошѣ,	хорошѣ,	хорошѣ	= good
горяч, горячѣ			= hot
свѣж, свѣжѣ			= fresh
похбж, похбжа,	похбже,	похбжи	= similar, like

Possessive Adjectives in -ин, -ын, such as дѣдин = uncle's, are declined as hard stem adjectives, but have short nominal endings in the Nom. and Acc. But *surnames* ending in -в and -н of Slavonic origin have a mixed declension (while those in -ский are declined like великий).

SING.	<i>Masc.</i>	Иванѣв	(surname)	PLUR. All Genders.
Nom.	<i>Fem.</i>	Иванова		Ивановы
Gen.		Ивановой		Ивановых
Dat.		Иванову		Ивановым
Acc.		Иванова		Ивановых
Instr.		Ивановым		Ивановыми
Loc.		Иванове		Ивановых

But a *placename* Иваново has Acc. Иваново, Instr.

Ивановом.

(It will be noticed that in Russian there is no "indefinite" declension of the adjective as in O.S. and Serbocroatian.)

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

As in adjectives of the Positive degree, there are in Russian both attributive and predicative forms of the Comparative and Superlative degrees of the adjective. And just as in many cases the Positive attributive adjective can be used predicatively, so likewise the attributive forms of the Comparative and Superlative degrees can also be used in the predicative position. (But the predicative is not used attributively.) E.g.:—

Attributive:—

Этѣ высокій дом	= This is a tall house.
Этѣ болѣе высокій дом	= This is a taller house.
Этѣ сѣмый высокій дом	= This is the tallest house.

Predicative:—

Этѣт дом высок ог	= This house is tall.
Этѣт дом высокій	
Этѣт дом выше ог	= This house is taller.
дом болѣе высокій	
Этѣт дом выше всех	= This house is the tallest.
Этѣт дом сѣмый высокій	

For most adjectives the *predicative Comparative* is formed by adding -ее (occasionally shortened to -ей) to the stem of the Positive adjective, e.g.:—

длинный, длиннее	= long
прямой, прямее	= straight
красивый, красивее	= beautiful

but with a number of common adjectives contractions and consonantal changes have taken place:—

густой, гуще	= dense
редкий, реже	= rare
короткий, короче	= short
крѣпкий, крѣче	= firm
богатый, богаче	= rich

тихий, тише	= quiet
дорогой, дороже	= dear
дешёвый, дешёвле	= cheap
молодой, моложе	= young
близкий, ближе	= near
широкий, шире	= wide
старый, старше	= old
далёкий, дальше	= far
долгий, дольше	= long (in time)

These are also the forms of the corresponding Comparative adverbs.

A few adjectives have corresponding attributive Comparative forms ending in -ий. These are mostly used in special senses:—

большой, больше	= greater
высокий, выше	= upper
молодой, младший	= junior
старый, старший	= elder, senior
дальний, дальнейший	= subsequent, further
низкий, низший	= lower, inferior

Notice the irregular comparatives:

сладкий	= sweet, comp.	слаще
глубокий	= deep,	глубже
большой	= big,	больше
малый, маленький	= small,	меньше
хороший	= good,	лучше
плохой	= bad,	хуже

The declinable attributive Comparatives
лучший } can mean either { better } or { best
худший } worse } worst.

The normal Superlative is formed with самый (m.), самая (f.), самое (n.), самые (pl.) and the positive degree: e.g. самый хороший = the best.

The form -айший, -ейший has come to have the meaning of an absolute Superlative in Russian, "the very smallest", etc. It is only formed from a few adjectives, e.g.:—

малейший	= the slightest
новейший	= the latest
длиннейший	= the lengthiest
чистейший	= the purest, sheer
высочайший	= the most exalted, extreme.

The Superlative with the prefix наи- is archaic and rare in Russian, the most frequently used being:—

наилучший	= the best
наибольший	= the greatest
наименьший	= the least

"Very" or "extremely" can also be expressed by the prefix пре-, e.g.—

преквёрный = very bad

Than = чем or нежели, followed by the Nominative—

он толще чем я = he is fatter than I

or else the Gen. case can be used:—

он толще меня.

Notice also the form for expressing "rather" or "somewhat", + Comparative:—

но-лучше = rather better

дайте что-нибудь по-дешёвле = give (us) something cheaper

"rather" + Positive = довольно (дешёвый).

Less than = меньше чем.

The (bigger), the (better) = чем больше, тем лучше

As (big) as = так(ой) же больш(ой) как.

As (soon) as possible = как можно скорее.

The biggest of them = самый больш(ой) из них.

ADVERBS

Adverbs in Russian are mostly identical in form with the neut. sing. Nom. of the short (predicative) form of the adjective and end in о, e.g.:—

высоко = high (adv.)

Soft adjectives can have adverbs ending in е, e.g.:—

крайне = extremely

while adjectives in -ский give adverbs ending in -ски,

e.g.:— дружески = in a friendly way, warmly
 Adverbs of time, place, manner, degree, etc. can have various endings:—

Place:—

тут	here	вне	= outside
здесь	there	внутри	= inside
там	hither, (to) here	снаружи	= outside, from outside
сюда	thither, (to) there	наверху	= above, upstairs
туда	from here, hence	вниз	= below, downstairs
отсюда	from there, thence	вперёд	= forward(s)
оттуда	from there, thence	назад	= backwards
везде	everywhere	сзади	= (from) behind
всюду	nowhere	издали	= from afar, at a distance
нигде	nowhere	позади	= behind, in the rear
близко	near	вокруг	= around
далекó	far	дома	= at home
вон	out	домой	= home

Time:—

теперь	now	иногда	= sometimes
ныне(arch.)	then	никогда	= never
тогда	afterwards	пóсле	= afterwards
потом	today	прéжде	= before, formerly
сегодня	yesterday	накануне	= on the eve
вчера	tomorrow	вдруг	= suddenly
завтра	already	сразу	= immediately,
уже	still, yet	тотчас	= at once
ещё	always	раз	= once
всегда	late	однажды	= often
пóздно	early	часто	= seldom, rarely
ранó	in the evening	редко	= recently,
вечером	in the morning	недávно	= lately
утром	at last	давнó	= a long time ago
наконец	soon	постоянно	= constantly
скоро	again	навсегда	= forever
вскоре	meanwhile	навéк	= forever
опять	now, present-	тóлько что	= just
пока	ly, soon	как раз	= exactly, just
сейчас	immediately		
сейчас же			
подчас	at times, occasionally		

Manner:—

так	so, thus	поневоле	= willy-nilly, unwillingly
иначе	differently, otherwise	даром	= gratis, in vain
никак	in no way	зря	= in vain
как-как	somehow	украдкой	= stealthily
так	so	прямó	= straight (on), directly
мédленно	slowly	налево	= to the left
быстро	fast, quickly	направо	= to the right
вместе	together	тóчно	= exactly
отдéльно	separately	пешкóм	= on foot
врозь	unexpectedly	нарóчно	= on purpose
неожиданно	usually		
обыкновенно	half-heartedly, inadvertently		
нэхотя			

Degree:—

бчень	very	действительно	= really
весьма(lit. lang.)	very	тельно	
многó	much	конéчно	= certainly, of course
мáло	little	совсéм	= quite, wholly
немножко	a little	совершенно	= completely
стóлько	so much	особенно	= especially
нэсколько	some, somewhat	тóлько	= only
почти	almost	лишь	
едва	hardly	мóжет быть	= perhaps
слишком	too much, too	навэрно	= probably
ббльше	more	навэрнякá	= for sure
мéьше	less	вообщé	= in general, at all
довольно	enough	в óбщем	= on the whole, all in all
слегкá	slightly	черезчур	= excessively
отчасти	partly	как раз	= just
эле-эле	hardly, just	непремéнно	= without fail
чуть-чуть	just a little		
постепенно	gradually		
понемногу	little by little		

Interrogative:—

где	= where?	скóлько	= how much?
куда	= where to? whither?	как дóлго	= how long?
откуда	= where from? whence?	почему	= why?
когда	= when?	отчего	
как	= how?	зачéм	

... ли (enclitic interrogative particle)
 рáзве ... = ... really ...?
 неужéли ... = surely ...?
 (как) бишь ... = (how) then ...?
 (how) ...?

Not = не, but "no" = нет, and "yes" = да.
 For the comparison of adverbs, see under "The Comparison of Adjectives", pp. 65-67.

CONJUNCTIONS AND PARTICLES

Conjunctions, too, have various forms, whether coördinating or subordinating:—

Coördinating:—

и = and
 но = but
 а = and (adverbative), but
 да [de] = (a weak) and
 йли ... йли = either ...
 or
 ни ... ни = neither ...
 ноr
 однáко = however
 всéраки = nevertheless
 чем
 всё же = still
 поóтому } = therefore
 итáк }
 слéдова- } = consequently
 тельно }
 стáло бáть = so, therefore
 (colloq.)
 к томú же = moreover
 йбо = for (causal)
 йменно = namely, to wit
 чем = than

Subordinating:—

éсли
 ёжели (pop., } = if
 arch.) }
 когдá } = when
 как = as, how
 тáк кáк = as, because
 потому что = because
 оттого что = because
 раз = once, since
 что = that (introducing indirect speech)
 так что = so that
 чтóб(ы) = in order that
 чтóбы не = lest
 хотя́, } = although
 хоть }
 пусть = let, even if
 покá (до тéх пóр) } = while
 } = until
 покá ... не }
 с тéх пóр кáк = since
 перед тéм кáк = before
 как тóлько = as soon as
 едвá } = hardly
 чуть } = scarcely
 тогдá как } = while,
 между тéм кáк } = whereas
 кáк бы ... ни = however
 much
 по мéре тогó } = (according)
 кáк } as
 поскóльку, or = as far as
 наскóлько
 дáром что = eventhough,
 despite
 как бúдо = as if

Notable is the absence of да as a subordinating conjunction, so widely used in South Slav, as well as in Old Slavonic.

Particles:—

кстáти = by the way, incidentally
 ... то(ем- phatic particle) = just, precisely;
 then
 слóвом = in a word = really, then
 напpимéр = for example
 тó есть, т.е. = that is to say, i.e. = maybe, perhaps
 ... мол }
 ... дéскать, } = he says пожáлуй = I suppose
 (quoting) } = obviously
 ... де } = I think
 ... г(ово)рйт } = maybe
 дáже } = even = doubtless
 ... ведь } = after all = so then
 (enclitic) } = as if, apparently
 ... же (ем- }
 phatic } = then, but
 particle) }
 бúдо бы }

PREPOSITIONS

Prepositions in Russian may govern any one, two or even three cases (except the Nom., of course).

With Gen.

без = without = among, between
 из = out of (arch.) = near
 с = off (poet.) = near
 крóме = except = near
 от = from = by (the side of)
 у = by, near = round
 для = for = in front of
 рáди¹ = for the sake of = past
 прóтив = against = from behind,
 до = up to, till = because of
 пóсле = after = from under
 прeждé = before = because of
 (of time) = in view of
 вмести = instead of = like
 средй = among = regarding

¹Also used as a postposition: e.g. Бóга рáди! = for God's sake! in the name of God!

With Dat.	= to	благодаря	= thanks to
к	= along, according to	вслед	= following, after
по	= despite		
вопреки			
With Acc.			
в	= into	за	= for, beyond, (to) behind
на	= on to	про	= about
сквозь	= through	под	= under (motion)
через	= across	с	expresses measurement
о (б)	= against (an object)	по	= up to
With Instr.			
с	= with	за	= behind (rest)
перед	= before	под	= under (rest)
между	= between	над	= above
With Loc.			
в	= in	при	= at, near
на	= on	по	= after, on account of
о (б)	= about		

As in O.S. *пepe* (пре), *пaз*, *вы* and also *вoз* (вз) (=up) and *низ* (=down) are only used as prefixes, but *пpo* (=about) is used as a preposition with the Acc.

THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS

Voices and Tenses

The Russian verbal system is somewhat simpler than that of Old Slavonic owing to the loss of the Dual number, the Imperfect and Aorist tenses, the Past *Participle* Active (as such) in -ть, the Supine, and the compound Pluperfect tense.

The Passive Voice is expressed, as in O.S., by a reflexive verb¹ (normally imperfective) or by the verb "to be" with the Past Participle Passive,² or by the 3rd pers. plur. used impersonally:—

Это считается	= This is considered ...
Город был атакован	= The town was attacked.
Его зовут	= He is called ...

The only true simple *tense* remaining in Russian

¹The reflexive verb in Russian has the reflexive suffix -ся, which is contracted to -сь in all forms of the verb ending in a vowel, except the (Active) participles.

²When the Infinitive itself is used, the Past Part. Pass. is in the Instr. case: быть презрѣнным (= to be despised). The Present Part. Pass. can be used to indicate a continuous process: быть почитаемым (= to be honoured).

is the Present (which in the case of Perfective verbs has a future meaning). The Personal endings are:—

<i>Sing.</i>		<i>Plur.</i>
1. -y(-ю)	1. -м	
2. -шь	2. -те	
3. -т	3. -ят(-ят), or -ат(-ят)	for <i>i</i> -verbs.

These endings are joined to the verb stem, in the case of the 2nd and 3rd pers. sing. and the 1st and 2nd pers. plur., by either *e* (pronounced *ě* when under stress, but no rule can be given as to when the stress occurs on the endings) or *и*. It should be noted that from the phonetic point of view these endings sound identical when not under stress, except in the 3rd pers. plur., which is -ят for *e* verbs and -ят, -ат for *и* verbs.

Owing to the fact that *e* in Russian always causes the preceding consonant to be palatalized, the first three O.S. classes of verbs, classified by their Presents, are really in Russian fused into one, though only the etymological knowledge of the previous separate existence of these three categories can explain why берѣ́ (= I take) has the ending in -y and оръя́ (= I plough) has the ending with *j*, -ю. The classification of Russian verbs by their Present is far simpler than that by the Infinitives, of which 66 main types, taken in conjunction with their corresponding Presents, exist.

Owing to the effect of "polnoglasié", the play of the stress accent, and various other phonetic developments, many new *Infinitive* endings have come into existence in Russian. The usual ending is -ть, corresponding to the O.S. -ти:—

Polnoglasié:	терѣть (= to rub); колѣть (= to prick).
Final Stress:	гpестá (= to row); вестá (= to lead); нестá (= to carry); везтá (= to transport).
Non-final Stress:	сестъ (= to sit down); пасть (= to fall); -честъ (= to read (in compounds)); лезть (= to climb).
Development of the nasal vowels:	дуть (= to blow); cf. жать (= to reap), начать (= to begin); взять (= to take).
Change of vowel in Infin.:	плыть (= to float), formerly плути.

Stem in velar¹: лечь (= to lie down); влечь (=to drag); with "polnoglasie" толбчъ (= to pound).

For practical purposes the learner should assume that the Present endings of all verbs are -у, -ешь, etc., while realizing that some verbs, often common ones, in -ать (держать, держать = hold) and -еть (гореть, горить = burn; терпеть, терпимь = suffer) and practically all verbs in -ить except those with monosyllabic Infinitives, together with a few exceptions in -ять (стоять = stand, бояться = fear) — have Present endings in -ю/у, -ишь, -ят, e.g.:—

дарить, дарить	= present
любить, любить	= love
бить, бьёмь	= beat
брить, брёшь	= shave
гнить, гниёшь	= rot
жить, живёшь	= live

but

In conversation uncertainty on this point will only be noticeable in the case of finally stressed verbs, i.e. about half the number.

For comparative purposes and with the above remarks in mind, we give below a classification of the Russian verbs according to Present and Infinitive on the exact scheme used previously for Old Slavonic. All the verbs with "new" Infinitives listed above fall into the e Russian category, i.e. Classes I-III below.

Etymological Classification of Russian Verbs according to their Presents, with Subdivisions according to their Infinitives

- I. A.a. несёт нести* = to carry. Same stem in Present and Infinitive, consonantal stem.
 б. плывёт плыть = float. Same stem in Present and Infinitive, formerly vowel stem.
 B.a. берёт брать = take. Infin. in -ать, consonantal stem.

¹See Class I A a and footnote in *Etymological Classification of Russian Verbs*, this page.

*So also: печёт печь = to bake, 1st p. sing. печу
 умрёт умереть = to die (pfve.)
 начнёт начать = to begin (pfve.)

- б. рвёт рвать = tear. Infin. in -ать, vowel stem originally (derived from рвати).
 двинет двинуть = move (pfve.). *n*-stems.
 III. Presents with -je- endings.
 1. Primary verbs.
 A.a. знает знать = know. Same stem in Pres. and Infin., vowel stem.
 б. мёлет молоть = grind. Same stem in Pres. and Infin., consonantal stem.
 B.a. тает таять = melt. Infin. in -ять, vowel stem.
 б. брёт брать = plough. Infin. in -ать, consonantal stem.

2. Derived verbs. All vowel stems.
 A.a. делает делать = do. *a*-stem.
 б. стареет стареть = grow old. Formerly *t*-stem, now written *e*.
 B. советует советовать = advise. -у- Pres. stem, -овать Infin. (hard stem).
 малбёт малевать = colour. -ю- Pres. stem, -евать Infin. (soft stem).
 IV. A. хвалит хвалить = praise. -и- through-out.
 B. видит видеть = see. -и- Present, -е- (formerly -т-) Infin.
 лежат лежать = lie, be lying. -и- Present, -е- (formerly -т-) Infin. changed to -а- after *chuiñ-tantes*.

- V. Athematic *m*-verbs—only two!
 дам, даст дать = give (pfve.)
 ем, ест есть = eat

The Future Tense and the Aspects

The Future of Imperfective verbs is formed by using the Infinitive with the Future tense of the verb "to be", быть; e.g.:—

Sing. 1	буду	делать	I shall do, or be doing
2	будешь	"	You will do, or be doing
3	будет	"	etc.
Plur. 1	будем	"	
2	будете	"	

3 будут дѣлать they will do, or be doing

Perfective verbs are Future in meaning in their "present" form, for to the Slav an action cannot be regarded as complete *in the present*. There are various ways of forming Perfective verbs from Imperfective verbs, such as using another form of the same root:—

дышать,дохнуть = to breathe,

using prepositional prefixes (the commonest method):—

писать, написать = to write

просить, попросить = to request,

adding the ending -нуть:—

кивать, кивнуть = to nod,

etc. In some cases the original verb is Perfective; the Imperfective is then formed by extending the root or lengthening it:—

дать, давать = to give

деть, девать = to put, stuff, do with.

This method is very common with verbs with prefixes, which are Perfective when the original Infinitive is used and Imperfective when the extended Infinitive has the same prefix:—

спросить, спрашивать = to ask (a question)

уговорить, уговаривать = to persuade

No regular and all-applicable rule can be given as to the formation of the aspects, and only study and wide reading enables one to recognize them at sight. In all East and West Slav languages the Perfective Present has a future meaning in main as well as in subordinate clauses, as in O.S. and in contrast to the modern South Slav languages. There are also no absolute rules for forming the less common Frequentative sub-aspect.

A few common verbs for which totally different roots are used to express the two aspects:—

<i>Impfv. Infin.</i>	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>Pfve. Infin.</i>	<i>Fut.</i>
брать = to take	беру́, берёшь	взять	возьму́, -ёшь
бить = to beat	бью́, бьёшь	ударить	ударю́, -ишь
класть = to put	кладу́, -ёшь	положить	положу́,
			поло́жюшь

ловить = to catch ловлю́, поймáть поймáю,
ловить ловишь -ёшь
говорить = to speak, говорю́, -ишь сказа́ть скажу́,
say скажешь

The Past Tense

The Past tense in Russian is formed in the same way from both Perfective and Imperfective verbs—by adding:—

-л (masc.)

-ла (fem.)

-ло (neut.)

-ли (plur.)

to the infinitive stem, that is, the Infin. without the -ть or -ти. These endings vary according to the gender and number of the subject, but not according to the person, which is indicated by a Personal Pronoun—also in the 3rd person when there is no substantival subject.

This tense is really the former Past Participle Active in -л, and formerly had the Present tense of быть as the auxiliary verb, as in modern South and West Slav languages. The dropping of this auxiliary verb in East Slav has caused the necessity for the use of the Personal Pronouns.

In meaning the Imperfective Past *generally* corresponds to the Imperfect tense of other languages, while the Perfective Past corresponds to the Past Definite, Preterite, or Aorist, and also to the Perfect.

In Russian, verbs whose infinitive stems go back to roots ending in с, з, к, г, б, р lose the л of the Past tense in the masc. sing. *only*, e.g.:—

нѣс	from the Infin.	нести́	= carry
вѣз	" "	везти́	= convey
те́к	" "	течь	= flow
мог	" "	мочь	= be able
грѣб	" "	грести́	= row
те́р	" "	терѣть	= rub

Verbs with stems in dentals and Infinitives in -сть or -сти lose these dentals before the л of the Past tense in *all* genders. The Infinitives:—

вести́ (for ведти)	= lead
упáсть (for упадть)	= fall
мести́ (for метти)	= sweep

have Past tenses:—

вёл, вела
упал, упала
мёл, мела

No invariable rule can be given on the shifting of the stress on to the final syllable in the fem. and neut. sing. and the plur. It was preserved in order to differentiate the genders more distinctly, as unstressed a and o sound the same: e.

Verbs with Infinitives in -нуть which denote a process drop the syllable -ну- in the Past:—

сбхнуть, сох = grow dry
киснуть, кис = grow sour
мокнуть, мок = soak, get wet
стынуть, стыл = get cool

The following Past tenses can be regarded as irregular:—

расти, рос = grow
жечь, жёл, жгла = burn (trans.)
ушибить, ушиб = knock (Pfve.)
сесть (Future: сяду), сел = sit down (Pfve.)
идти, шёл, шла = go
исчезнуть = disappear (Pfve.),
has исчез and
исчезнул.

The Conditional Mood

The Conditional in Russian is identical with the Past with the particle бы added:—

Я сделал бы это = I would do this

This particle is often contracted to б and in subordinate clauses generally follows immediately on the subordinating conjunction:—

хотя б (ы) я это делал = even if I were to do this

N.B. если б (ы) (= if) should not be written as one word.

The Imperative Mood

The Imperative endings, always added to the Present stem, are (for both aspects):—

For verbs with consonantal stem:—

2nd pers. sing. (a) -и or (b) -ь
2nd pers. plur. (a) -ите or (b) -ьте

For verbs with vocalic stem:—

2nd pers. sing. -й
2nd pers. plur. -йте

The endings (a) are added to the Present stem (usually seen most clearly by removing the last three letters of the 2nd pers. sing.) when the 1st pers. sing. is finally stressed, the endings (b) being used when the 1st pers. sing. is not finally stressed, e.g.:—

иду́, иди́ = go
люблю́, люби́ = love
брошу́, броси́шь, брось = throw (Pfve.)
сяду́, сяди́ = sit down (Pfve.)

But endings (a) are used when the Present stem ends in two consonants:—

крикну́, крикни́ = shout (Pfve.)

The Imperatives of verbs with vocalic stems can be finally stressed or not:—

дела́й = do
броса́й = throw (Impfve.)
совета́й = advise
мало́й = paint

The following two verbs have irregular Imperatives:—

леж, лягу́: ляг = lie down
есть: ешь = eat

For the 1st. pers. plur. the same person of the Present or Perfective Future is used with or without the addition of the polite ending -те:—

пойдём(те) = let us go
идём(те) = let us go (along)

¹The form without -те can be preceded by дава́йте when Pfve. (Fut.); but when the Impfve. aspect is used, the Infinitive follows: дава́йте игра́ть (= let us play!).

The 3rd pers. sing. and plur. are most commonly rendered by the word *пусть* or *пустькѣй* (= let!) preceding the Present or Perfective Future:—

пусть он говорит = let him talk
пусть он скажет = let him say

In certain expressions the form of the 2nd p. sing. Imperative is also used for the 3rd p. sing. and plur. Imperative: *Не дай Бог!* = God forbid! *Будь онъ прокляты!* May they be cursed!

The Gerunds

The *Present Gerund* or *Verbal Adverb* is formed from Imperfective verbs by adding *я* to the Present stem, seen in the 2nd pers. sing.:—

дѣлая = doing *говоря* = speaking

but -а after *chuintantes*:

плача = weeping

It is active in meaning and is used to indicate an action simultaneous to that of the main verb, like the Present Participle in -*ing* in English: but being an adverb in Russian, i.e. as it qualifies the verb in the clause and not the nouns, it can refer only to the *subject* of that clause. Present Gerunds in Russian can qualify a verb in any tense.

There are three irregular formations:—

даёшь, давая = giving
устаёшь but *устаная* = tiring
узнаёшь but *узнавая* = recognizing

A few Perfective verbs of Classes I and IV form Present Gerunds which are really past in meaning:—

войдя = on entering
выйдя = having gone out
принеся = having brought
увидя = having seen
возвратясь = having returned
отступя = having stepped back, etc.

A number of verbs, mostly with monosyllabic Infinitives, have no Pres. Gerund:—

пить = drink *ткать* = weave
гнуть = bend *лгать* = tell lies

There also exists another form of the Pres. Gerund in folk poetry and peasant speech. It is formed by adding -чи to the 3rd pers. plur. of the Pres. less its final *т*:—

сидячи = sitting, *распеваючи* = singing;
but *будучи* = being, is the *only* existing form of the Pres. Ger. from *быть*.

The *Past Gerund* is formed, most often from Perfective verbs, by adding -в or -вши to the Infinitive stem:—

сделавши = having done
читав = reading (in the past)

Those without *л* in the masc. Past add -ши:—
выросши = having grown up

Dental stems of Class I restore the dental and add -ши: *введши* = having led out.

It also is Active and indicates an action previous to that of the verb which it qualifies, like the English Past Participle: having done, etc., and refers only to the subject of the clause. It is equivalent to a subordinate clause with a verb in the Past tense.

Reflexive verbs always require the full ending (в)ши to which *сь* is added:—

сделавшись = having become
переодѣвшись = having changed (clothes)

Past Gerunds formed from verbs which have no Present Gerund (see above) have the meaning of Present Gerunds:

пив = drinking *гнув* = bending

The Participles

These are verbal adjectives in Russian and can qualify a noun in any case. Being declined like adjectives, they agree with the noun in gender, number, and case. The two passive participles have short, predicative forms as well.

The *Present Participle Active* is formed from the 3rd pers. plur. of the Present tense of Impfv. verbs

by cutting off the *т* and adding *-щий, -щая, -щие*¹:—

делающий = who is doing
любящий = who loves

The *Past Participle Active* is formed in the same way as the *Past Gerund*, by adding *-(в)ший, -(в)шая, -(в)шее* to the *Infin. stem* of the verb, *Imperfective* as well as *Perfective*¹:—

читавший = who has read, or who was reading or who used to read
прочитавший = who has read through
вбросивший = who has grown up

The *Present Participle Passive* is formed from some *Imperfective transitive* verbs by adding *-ый, -ая, -ое* to the 1st pers. plur. of the *Present*:—

читаемый = being read
гонимый = pursued

A few verbs have the irregular ending *-омый* added to their consonantal stems:—

несомый = being carried
искомый = being looked for
ведомый = being led
влекомый = being drawn

Some transitive verbs have no *Present Participle Passive*:—

братъ = take петъ = sing
мыть = wash бить = beat, etc.

This participle is beginning to be felt as somewhat archaic and literary.

The *Past Participle Passive* is, with the *Infinite* and the *Present* or *Future*, the third "principal part" of any verb, i.e. its form has to be learnt for each verb. It is formed only from transitive verbs, of course, and only general rules giving alternatives

¹ Reflexive verbs which, of course, have no passive participles, have the full ending in the *Present* and *Past Participles*, e.g.:—

интересующийся = who interests himself.
сделавшийся = who has become.

can be given on its formation. It is formed mostly, but not exclusively, from *Perfective* verbs.

Those with *Infinitives* in *-ать* of two or more syllables add *-нный, -нная, -нное* to the *Infin.* less the *-ть*. Most other verbs add the endings *-енный, -енная, -енное* or *-ённый, -ённая, -ённое* to the root of the verb. This ending causes the "First Palatalization" in velar stems of *Class I* and yotation in verbs of *Class IV*; and the position of the stress is generally the same as in the 2nd pers. sing. of the *Present*:—

сделанный = done
сделавшь = received
полученный = desired
получишь = presented
желанный = noticed
желавшь
подарённый
подаришь
примеченный
приметишь

Fewer verbs, mostly those with *monosyllabic* roots and transitive verbs in *-нуть* form the *Past Part. Pass.* by dropping the *ь* of the *Infin.* and adding the adjectival endings *-ый, -ая, -ое*. All verbs in *-нуть, -нять* and *-нть* form the *Past Part. Pass.* in this way:—

пóнятый = understood
мытый = washed
вб́тянутый = stretched out
на́чатый = begun
согрéтый = warmed

Verbal nouns can be formed from *Past Participles Passive*, actual—or fictitious for intransitive verbs, with the endings *-ье* (*-ие* for *Pfve.* verbs and literary):

деланье(-ние) = doing
понимáние = understanding
получéние = receiving, receipt
взя́тие = taking
мы́тье = washing

Examples of the Conjugation of the two types of Verbs
1. e type.

нести = to carry (Impfve.) делать = to do (Impfve.)

PRESENT
Sing. 1. нес^у (cf. могу = I can) делаю*
2. несёшь можешь делашь
3. несёт [nɪ'ʂot] может [mozɪt] делаёт [dɛləjɪt]
Plur. 1. несём etc.) делаем
2. несёте делаете
3. несут делают

IMPERATIVE
Sing. 2. нес^и делай
Plur. 2. нес^ите делайте

GERUNDS
Present нес^я делаю
Past (по) нес^и (с) делавши

PARTICIPLES
Pres. Act. нес^ущий делаящий
Pres. Pass. нес^омый делаемый
Past Act. нес^ищий делавший
Past Pass. (по) нес^енный (с) деланный

PAST TENSE
нес, нес^ла, нес^ло, делал, делала, делало,
нес^ли делали

*Consonant stem verbs of Cl. III undergo yotation throughout their Present and Imperative: пишу, пишешь, etc., пиши! = write.

2. *i type*
хвалить = to praise (Impfve) сидеть = to sit (Impfve.)

PRESENT
Sing. 1. хвал^ю* саж^у*
2. хвал^ишь саж^ишь
3. хвал^{ит} ('xvaɪt) саж^{ит} ('sɪ'qit)
Plur. 1. хвал^{им} саж^{им}
2. хвал^{ите} саж^{ите}
3. хвал^ят саж^ят

IMPERATIVE
Sing. 2. хвал^и саж^и
Plur. 2. хвал^{ите} саж^{ите}

GERUNDS
Present хвал^я саж^я
Past (по) хвал^{ив}ши (по) саж^{ев}ши

PARTICIPLES
Pres. Act. хвал^ящий саж^ящий
Pres. Pass. хвал^{им}ый саж^{им}ый
Past Act. хвал^{ив}ший саж^{ев}ший
Past Pass. хвал^{ен}ный* саж^{ен}ный*

PAST TENSE
хвал^{ил}, хвал^{ила}, хвал^{ило}, хвал^{или} сид^{ел}, сид^{ела},
-л^о, -л^и

*All *i*-verbs have yotation in the 1st pers. sing. Pres. and in the Past Partic. Passive.

The verb "to be" and the *athematic m*-verbs (Class V)
быть = to be; дать = to give (Pfive.); есть = to eat
(Impfve.) (старь—old spelling)

PRESENT
Sing. 1. ем (wanting) ем
2. ешь (wanting) ешь
3. есть есть
Plur. 1. едим (wanting) едим
2. едите (wanting) едите
3. едят (суть: rare) едят

FUTURE
Sing. 1. буду (reg.) дам
2. будешь дашь
3. будет даст
Plur. 1. будем дадим
2. будете дадите
3. будут дадут

IMPERATIVE
Sing. 2. будь дай
Plur. 2. будьте дайте

GERUNDS
Pres. будучи дай
Past бывши давши
PARTICIPLES с^ущий давший
Pres. Act. — (ед^омый) едящий (ед^омый)
Pres. Pass. бывший евший
Past Act. давший давший
Past Pass. давший давший

PAST TENSE:
был, была, был^о, были дал, дала, ел, ела,
был^о, был^и дали давал, дали ел^о, ел^и

N.B. в^едать = to know, is a regular *e* type verb, like д^елать: Present 1st p. sing. в^едаю.

Irregular and Noteworthy verbs

1. дав^ать (= to give, Impfve.), has an irregular Present and Pres. Participle Active. All its other forms are built on the stem дава-.

Pres. Sing. 1 да^ю Императив: да^{вай}
2 да^{ешь} Pres. Gerund да^{вая}
3 да^{ёт} Past Gerund -да^{ва}в
Plur. 1 да^{ем} Pres. Part. Passive да^{ва}емый
2 да^{ете} Past Part. Active да^{ва}вший
3 да^{ют} Past Part. Passive —
Pres. Part. Act. да^ющий Past Tense: да^{вал}, -а,
-о, -и

¹"There is (or: are) not (or: no)" has the special form—нет + Genitive.

So also the Imperfectives: -ставать, -знавать, -е.9. уставать = to get tired, узнавать = to recognize, find out.

2. хотеть (= to want) (irregular only in the Present).

Pres. Sing. 1 хочу Plur. 1 хотим
2 хочешь 2 хотите
3 хочет 3 хотят

3. бегать (= to run, Impfve.), also has an irregular Present:—

Pres. Sing. 1 бегу Plur. 1 бежим
2 бежишь 2 бегите
3 бежит 3 бегут Imperat.: беги

4. гнать (= to drive, chase, Impfve.), has a Class IV Present, Present Gerund and Participles:—

Pres. Sing. 1 гоню Plur. 1 гоним
2 гонишь 2 гоните
3 гонит 3 гонят
Pres. Gerund гоня
Pres. Part. Active гонящий Past гнал, гнала
Pres. Part. Passive гонимый гнали, гнали

Notice also the following verbs, many of which are models for verbs with similar Infinitive endings:—

Class I.	=to begin (Pfve.)	Fut.: начну, начнешь	Past: начал, -а
начать	=to curse (Pfve.)	Pres.: клянú, клянешь	" -О, -И
клясть	=to press	" жму, жмешь	" клял, -á
жать	=to reap	" жну, жнешь	" жал, -а
жать	=to crumple	" мну, мнешь	" жал, -а
мять	=to under-stand (Pfve.)	пойму, поймешь	" мял, -а
понять	=to lift (Pfve.)	подниму, поднимешь	" понял, -á
поднять	=to die (Pfve.)	умру, умрешь	" умр., умрла
умереть	=to forget (Pfve.)	забуду, забудешь	" забыл, -а
забыть			

(про)честъ=to read (through) (Pfve.)	Fut.: прочту, прочтешь	Past: прочёл, прочла
класть =to put (Impfve.)	Pres.: кладу, кладешь	" клал, -а
сестъ =to sit down (Pfve.)	Fut.: сяду, сядешь	" сел, -а
лечь =to lie down (Pfve.)	" лягу, ляжешь	" лёг, легла
жечь =to burn	Pres.: жгу, жжешь	" жёг, жгла
мочь =to be able	" могу, можешь	" мог, могла
толочь =to pound	" толку, толчешь	" толк, толкла
ушибить =to knock, hurt (Pfve.)	Fut.: ушибу, ушибешь	" ушиб, ушибла
грестъ =to row	Pres.: грёбу, грёбешь	" грёб, грёбла
реветь =to roar	" реву, ревшь	" ревел, ревели
жить =to live	" живу, живешь	" жил, -á
ткать =to weave	" тку, ткешь	" ткал, -а
звать =to call	" зову, зовешь	" звал, -á

Class II.

деть =to put care-lessly	Pres.: дёну, денешь	Past.: дёл, -а
стать =to become; start (Pfve.)	Fut.: стану, станешь	стал, -а
стыть =to cool (intrans.)	Pres.: стáну, стáнешь	стыл, -а
достичъ=to reach (Pfve.)	Fut.: достйгну, достйгнешь	достйг, достйгла

Class III.

пить =to drink	Pres.: пью, пьешь	" пил, -á
петь =to sing	Pres.: пою, поешь	Past: пел, -а
мыть =to wash	" мою, мбешь	" мыл, -а
полоть=to weed	Pres.: полю, полешь	" полбл, -а
колбть=to prick	" колбу, колбешь	" колбл, -а
слать =to send	" шлю, шлешь	" слал, -а
стлать=to spread	" стелю, стелешь	" стлал, -а
ковать=to forge (iron)	" кую, куешь	" ковал, -а

So also: бить=to hit
вить=to weave

So also: креть=to cover
рыть =to dig

Imperat.: приезжай... (None)
(Impfve. and Pfve.)

Similarly: to go away (on foot) = уходить, уйти
to go away (conveyed) = уезжать, уехать
to go out (on foot) = выходить, выйти
Past!: вышел, вышла...
= выезжать, выехать.

On the same scheme:—

To carry:
Impfve.: нести. Pfve.: понести.
Pres.: несёу, несёшь... Fut.: понесёу...
Past: нёс, неслá, понёс...
Imperat.: неси... неси...
Freq.: носйть.
Pres.: носу, носйшь...
Past: носйл, носйла...
Imperat.: носй... носй...

To bring:
Impfve. and Freq.: Ffve.: принести.
приносить.
Pres.: приношу, Fut.: принесёу, принесёшь...
приносишь...

To lead:
Impfve.: вести. Pfve.: повести.
Pres.: ведёу, Fut.: поведёу...
ведёшь... повёл...
Past: вёл, велá, велй. Ffve.: поведй...
Imperat.: ведй... Freq.: водйть.
Pres.: вожу, водйшь...
Past: водйл, водйла...
Imperat.: водй... Ffve.: привести.

To bring (a person):
Impfve. and Freq.: Ffve.: привезти.
приводйть.
Pres.: привожу, Fut.: приведёу, приведёшь...
приводйшь...

To convey:
Impfve.: везти. Pfve.: повезти.
Pres.: везёу, Fut.: повезёу...
везёшь... повёз...
Past: вёз, везлá, везлй.
везлб, везлй.

N.V. смель=to dare Pres.: смёю, смёешь Past: смел,
(regular) -а

Class IV.
спать =to sleep " сплю, спишь " спал,
спят (3rd p. pl) -á
читать =to honour " чту, чтишь " читл,
but чтут (3rd p. pl) -а
стоять =to stand " стою, стоишь " стоял,
-а
бояться=to fear " боюсь, боялся,
бойшься боялась

Verbs of Going and Conveying

To go (on foot):
Impfve.: идти Pfve.: пойти.
Pres.: идёу, идёшь... Fut.: пойдёу, пойдёшь...
Past: шёл, шлá, пошёл, пошлá...
шли. Ffve.: пойдй...
Imperat.: идй... Freq.: ходйть.
Pres.: хожу, ходйшь...
Past: ходйл, ходйла...
Imperat.: ходй... Ffve.: поехать.

To go (be conveyed):
Impfve.: ёхать. Pfve.: поехать.
Pres.: ёду, ёдёшь... Fut.: поёду...
Past: ёхал, ёхалá... поёхал...
Imperat.: (none) поезжай... Ffve.: поехать.
(Impfve. and Pfve.)
Freq.: ёздить.
Pres.: ёзжу, ёздишь...
Past: ёздил, ёздила...
Imperat.: ёзди, -те

To come (on foot):
Impfve. and Freq.: Ffve.: прийти.
приходйть.
Pres.: прихожу, Fut.: придёу, придёшь...
приходишь...
Past: приходйл... пришёл, пришлá...
Imperat.: приходй... придй...

To come (conveyed):
Impfve. and Freq.: Ffve.: приехать.
приезжать.
Pres.: приезжаю, Fut.: приедёу...
приезжáешь...
Past: приездл, приездлá...
приехал, приехала...

Imperat.: везй... повезй...
 Pres.: вожу, вѳзйшь...
 Past: возйл, возйла...
 Imperat.: возй...

To bring (in a vehicle):

Impfve. and Freq.: Pфve.: привезтй.
 привозйтй.
 Pres.: привожу, Fut.: привезу, привезёмь...
 привѳзйшь...

TEXTS

(The first two passages are given in the old spelling for comparison with other Slavonic languages.)

I.
 Отъ Луки, VIII.

5. Вышель съятель съять сѳмя свое; и когда онъ съяль, иное упало при дорогѳ и было потоптано, и птицы небесныя поклевали его;

6. а иное упало на камень и взошедъ засохло, потому что не имѳло влаги;

7. а иное упало между тернйемъ, и выросло тернйе и заглушило его;

8. а иное упало на добрую землю и взошедъ приносило плодъ сторицный. Сказавъ сйе, возгласилъ: кто имѳеть уши слышать, да слышитъ.

II.
 А.С. Пушкинъ.

Пророкъ

Духовной жаждою томимъ,
 Въ пустынѳ мрачной я влачился,
 И шестикрылый Серафимъ
 На перепутьи мнѳ явился;
 Перстами легкими какъ сонъ
 Моихъ зѳницъ коснулся онъ:
 Отверзлись вѳщйя зѳницы,
 Какъ у испуганной орлицы.
 Моихъ ушей коснулся онъ,
 И ихъ наполнилъ шумъ и звонъ:

И вняль я неба содроганье,
 И горнй ангеловъ полѳтъ,
 И гадъ морскихъ подводный ходъ,
 И дольней лозы прозябанье.
 И онъ къ устамъ моимъ приникъ,
 И вырвалъ грѳшный мой языкъ,
 И празднословный и лукавый,
 И жало мудрыя змѳи
 И жало замёршия мои
 Вложи десницею кровавою.
 И онъ мнѳ грудь разсъкъ мечемъ,
 И сердце трепетное вынулъ,
 И угля, пылающй огнемъ,
 Во грудь отверстую водвинулъ.
 Какъ трутъ въ пустынѳ я лежалъ,
 И Бога гласъ ко мнѳ возвалъ:
 "Возстанъ, Пророкъ, и виждъ и внемли,
 Исполнишь волею моею,
 И обходя моря и земли,
 Глаголомъ жги сердца людей."

III.
 Ф. Достоевский.

Дагестанских татар было трое и все они были родные братья. Два из них были уже пожилые, но третий, Алей, был не более двадцати двух лет, а на вид ещё моложе. Его место на нарах было рядом со мною. Его прекрасное, открытое, умное и в то же время добродушно-наивное лицо с первого взгляда привлекло к нему моѳ сердце, и я так рад был, что судьба послала мне его, а не другого кого-нибудь в соседнй. Вся душа его выразилась на его красивом, можно даже сказать прекрасном лице. Улыбка его была так доверчива, так детски простодушна; большие чёрные глаза были так мягки, так ласковы, что я всегда чувствовал особое удовольствие, даже облегчение в тоске и в грусти, глядя на него.

IV.
 А.А. Фет.

Сядем здесь, у этой ивы.
 Что за чудные извивы
 На коре вокруг дупла!
 А под ивой—как красивы
 Золотые переливы
 Струй дрожащего стекла!

Ветви сочные дугою
 Перегнулись над водою,

Как зелёный водопад;
 Как живые, как иглою,
 Будто споря меж собою,
 Листья воду бороздят.

В этом зеркале под ивой
 Уловил мой глаз ревнивый
 Сердцу милые черты...
 Мягче взор твой горделивый...
 Я дрожу, глядя, счастливый,
 Как в воде дрожишь и ты...

V.
 Семен Кирсанов.

Станция "Маяковская"

На новом
 радиусе
 у рельс метро—
 я снова
 радуюсь,
 мне так светло!

Шёл поезд
 издали,
 тоннель шумней—
 он ярко
 осветлил
 всю душу мне.

Я будто еду
 путем
 сквозным
 в стихи
 к поэту,
 на встречу с ним.
 Я сердце
 вымчал,
 взволнован весь,
 к Владим Владимчу—
 и вот он
 здесь.

Встает
 живой еще
 тоннелем вдаль
 слов
 нержавеющей
 живая сталь,

слова
 не замерли
 его руки,
 прожилки мрамора—
 черновики!

Тут—
 в сводах каменных,
 лучами в тьму,
 подземный
 памятник
 стоит—
 ему!

Не склеп,
 не статуя,
 не истукан,
 а слава
 статная
 его стихам!

Тоннель
 прорезывая,
 увидим мы:
 его поэзия
 живёт
 людьми,
 он не изнашивается
 и в долгие
 срок—
 множеством
 горячих щек,
 он
 не исплеснится,
 смотрите—
 там—

по строчкам—
 лестницам
 он сходит
 сам,
 идет,
 задумавшись,
 в подземный дом—
 в ладонях
 юности
 любимый том.

Пусть рельсы
 тянутся
 на сотни лет!
 Товарищ станция,

зеленый
 свет!
 Землѣй
 МОСКОВСКОЮ
 на все пути—
 СТИХ
 МАЯКОВСКОГО,
 СВЕТИ, СВЕТИ!

SECTION 2. UKRAINIAN

INTRODUCTION

The Ukrainians are the descendants of the South West branch of the East Slavs.

Only since the Second World War have the fertile, but often ravaged, broad lands of the Ukraine been united within one frontier in the Ukrainian S.S.R. (Beyond its borders Ukrainians are to be found in Dobruja, Hungary, Poland, Czechoslovakia, Yugoslavia, on the Don and Lower Volga, in the Kazakh S.S.R., in Siberia, and in large numbers in North America.) This land, noted throughout Russia for its cheerful and attractive songs, has a language whose musicality and flexibility can vie with its most beautiful sisters in the West and South Slav groups. Ukrainian is a more "popular" form of East Slav than Russian—it has less borrowings from Church Slavonic, using forms like солбдкий for "sweet", and not liking words like гравá for "chapter" (Ukr. розділ); and at the same time it has more borrowings from Western Europe, chiefly via Polish.

Modern literary Ukrainian is founded mainly on the dialect of the Middle Dniepr region south of Kiev (the "south-eastern" dialect, according to the modern division of the dialects).

It has a common origin with Russian, in that Old Russian, the language of the non-ecclesiastical documents of Kievan Rus' up to its destruction by the Tartars in 1240, is the common ancestor of both—and indeed of Byelorussian as well. Thus it can be claimed that many of the oldest works of Russian literature also belong among the oldest examples of literature in Ukrainian, and indeed they do geographically. The other parent of these literatures is, of course, Church Slavonic, which remained the official literary and ecclesiastical language in Ukraine as long as it did in Russia proper. And so it can be said that most of the oldest literature of Ukraine is in Church Slavonic. The earliest MSS., however, from the Kiev and Chernigov regions, dating from the eleventh century, and from Galicia dating from the twelfth century, already show Ukrainian characteristics in their language.

Ukraine suffered a different fate and underwent different cultural influences from her northern and eastern neighbour, Russia proper. In 1321, after a short period of independence for the principality of Galicia-Volhynia in the West, which had no ties with

the surviving Great Russian centres of Nóvgorod, Súzdal', and Ryazán', most of the Ukrainian lands were taken over by Lithuania, whose official language was Western Russian (a form of Old Byelorussian mixed with Church Slavonic). Private documents of Ukrainian origin from this period do, however, show Ukrainian linguistic features. In 1569, Lithuania was united to Poland by the Union of Lublin; and thus all the Ukrainian territories came under Poland. It is to this period, which lasted for the western territories up to the first partition of Poland in 1772, that Ukrainian owes most of its more superficial differences from Russian, such as its differences of vocabulary. By coming under Poland, Ukraine also felt the influence of the Reformation and of the West more strongly than Russia. Efforts were made to translate Church books into the living, popular language of that time. Through the influence of the Polish language and the Roman Catholic Church many expressions from Latin and West European languages entered Ukrainian. This is already noticeable in the so-called (comic) "Interludes" to the religious plays written and performed in Ukraine from the seventeenth century. The "Interludes" were intentionally written in the local popular language, in contrast to the Church Slavonic of the more serious parts, and were the first examples of written popular Ukrainian. Various kinds of verse, satirical, historical, lyric, and even religious, were also written in this language. On the other hand, consciously Ukrainian leading figures, who wished to resist the polonization of the Ukrainian upper classes and to preserve the national and cultural individuality of their people and their Orthodox faith, cultivated and perfected the use of Church Slavonic as a weapon in the struggle.

In 1648, as a reaction against Polish oppression, the eastern part of the Ukrainian lands under the leadership of Bohdan Khmel'nyts'ky rebelled against Poland and later offered their allegiance to the Orthodox Czar Alexis of Moscow. For a time after this they enjoyed a certain amount of autonomy, the recollection of which bore its fruits in the literary products of the end of the eighteenth and of the nineteenth centuries. By this time Ukrainian was already to a very large extent a distinct and separate language from Russian. Its literature, largely polemical in content, however, gave only the poorest reflection of it, being couched in a clumsy jargon, or mixture of Ukrainian, Byelorussian, Polish, and Church Slavonic elements, known later as "язвіе" and surviving into the eighteenth century.

The efforts at writing in the popular language culminated in the works of Iván Kotl'arév's'ky (b. in Poltava in 1769, d. in 1838), whose travesty of Virgil's *Aeneid*, "Eheida," and operetta "Haránka Porrábka" are generally recognized as the first successful and "classical" works in Ukrainian, such as we know it to-day.

However, in those days Ukrainian was still not generally recognized as a separate language; and Josef Dobrovský, the Czech scholar and the father of modern Slavonic studies, persisted until his death in refusing to admit it as anything more than a dialect of Russian.

The first works of Kotl'arév's'ky were originally published in a Russian spelling, as was also Shevchenko's collection of poems "Kobzáp" later, in 1840. The nineteenth century saw a succession of efforts to evolve for Ukrainian an orthography and alphabet of its own, distinct from both Church Slavonic and Russian. The historical spelling of Maksymóvych for various reasons did not generally take root, although it influenced the spelling used in Transcarpathian Ukraine until quite recently. It was finally replaced by the kyrilíčka, the alphabet based on a modification of the Russian рракдánka and evolved by Panteleymón Kulísh (1819-97), the nationalist poet, novelist, historian, ethnographer, and translator of the Bible and Shakespeare, whose tireless work did so much to establish Ukrainian as a literary language with a scientific basis. His grammar of Ukrainian first appeared in 1857. His spelling broadly followed the "phonetic" principle of one letter per sound.

In literature the reputation of Ukrainian was established by the poetry of Tarás Shevchénko (1814-69), the son of a serf, who at the same time as several other members of the "Slavophil" Society of SS. Cyril and Methodius, was banished by the Czar in 1846 to serve as a common soldier in Central Asia and forbidden to write or paint for ten years. Some of his poems secretly written in exile and filled with a love for his native Ukraine and its people, reach great heights of touching beauty. His longer poems recall the past glories of the free Ukraine in the seventeenth century. He was a conscious Slavophil as well as a Ukrainian patriot, and deliberately wrote in the popular Ukrainian of his time, enriched by borrowings from Church Slavonic such as would be comprehensible to other Slavs. Later writers avoided borrowings from

¹Orsk, Mangeshlak, by the Aral Sea.

Church Slavonic and followed the popular language more completely, which is the main reason why modern Ukrainian has far fewer borrowings from Church Slavonic than modern Russian has.

After Shevchénko there followed a steady stream of distinctively national writers, such as the woman novelist Márko Vovchók (Marija Markóvychka, 1834-1907); the lyric poet and fabulist, Leoníd Hlíbov (1827-93); the lyric poet and satirist, Stepán Rudáns'ky (1833-73); Oleksánder Konýs'ky (1836-1900)—poet, writer of short stories, critic, and biographer of Shevchénko; and many others.

But the Ukrainian language was not allowed to evolve smoothly under the Czars, who regarded its development as an effort to tear away Ukraine from Russia. In 1863, Ukrainian was forbidden as a language of instruction in schools; and in 1876 printing and publishing in proper Ukrainian was forbidden altogether within the Russian Empire. The ukase promulgating this was a secret one, so that the Russian public learned of it only some years later from an article in the *Revue des deux mondes*. Only books and texts in Ukrainian printed entirely in Russian spelling were allowed. This spelling the Ukrainians humorously nicknamed "рѣ́мка", "the messenger boy's spelling."

The result was that many leading Ukrainian intellectuals and writers of the time emigrated abroad. The chief cultural centre of Ukrainians became L'viv (L'vov) in Galicia, by then inherited through the partitions of Poland, by Austro-Hungary. The language of Galicia was more strongly influenced by Polish and also had certain features of its own, which émigrés from Eastern Ukraine began to take over during their exile.

One of the greatest Ukrainians of that time, Mykháýlo Drahománov (1841-95), the ethnographer and professor of Kiev University, had to emigrate, and taught for a time in Sófia, Bulgaria, and later worked in Geneva. He at first advocated the use of the Latin alphabet for Ukrainian and later a more phonetic spelling in Cyrillic. But neither of these schemes were accepted by the mass of his countrymen, though his humanistic ideas in a broader field had a great influence on the Galician poet Iván Frankó (1856-1916), Ukraine's second great national poet.

The official attitude towards Ukrainian in Russia at that time was that of questioning the very existence of an independent Ukrainian language. As late as 1896, one of the big encyclopedias, that of Spokrayc and Eфopн, as if refusing to recognize Ukrainian as a separate language, calls it in the title of its article on it "The Little Russian dialect of the Russian

language" (малороссійское нарѣчје русскаго языка).

In 1905, the ban in Russia on the use of Ukrainian was lifted with the introduction of the new constitution; and Kiev again became the cultural centre of Ukraine. The language of Dniepr Ukraine then again definitely took the ascendancy as the basis of literary Ukrainian. Two years later, in 1907, Borýs Hrinchénko was able to publish his authoritative Ukrainian-Russian dictionary, which is still regarded as a basic work to this day.

With the establishment of the Soviet régime, the Ukrainians, like other nationalities, gained a cultural and administrative independence in the Ukrainian S.S.R., such as they had not known before. An All-Ukrainian Academy of Sciences had been established, one of whose tasks was the development of the Ukrainian language and the final settling of questions of orthography. In this task the Ukrainian academicians invited and obtained the coöperation of Ukrainian scholars and linguists living outside the (then) boundaries of the Soviet Union. Thus the Ukrainians of Galicia and Subcarpathian Russia worked with them for the complete unification of the Ukrainian language on the basis of the language of Kiev and of Great or Dniepr Ukraine. The goal was achieved not without some struggles and sacrifices, but finally those in favour of a form of language not deliberately differentiated from the closely-allied Russian language won the day. Unlike Russian, Ukrainian did not undergo any radical spelling reform after the Revolution. Apart from a spate of neologisms, Ukrainian continued to change only slowly, by evolution.

In 1927, a new edition of B. Hrinchénko's Ukrainian-Russian dictionary was published under the editorship of S. Yefrémov and A. Nikóvs'ky.

The principles which guided the composition of the Ukrainian Orthography ("Український Правѣпис"), published in Kiev in 1946, may serve as a fitting conclusion to what was in the past an often unhappy and stormy struggle for development and as a remarkable example of wisdom in solving (in the very turmoil of war) what has long been a delicate and painful question. As in the Second World War, in this case too, the Ukrainians clearly decided not to break away from their Russian brothers in the Soviet Union. The guiding principles were the following:—

1. To decide on a practical orthography, keeping to what has already been established, and not compelling the educated masses of the country to re-learn their orthographical rules.

2. To preserve the popular basis of the orthography, i.e. its nearness to the pronunciation of the people in the widest sense.
3. To be guided in all important points of phonetics, morphology, etc., by the writings of the best writers of the past and present.
4. In matters of orthography, shared by their nature with other languages (e.g. punctuation, the use of capitals, hyphens, etc.), to ensure uniformity with the orthographies of the brother peoples of the Soviet Union, especially the Russians, being guided by the latest plan drawn up by the State Commission.
5. To avoid as far as possible variants in spelling.
6. To reduce to a minimum the number of exceptions to rules.
7. In formulating rules, to be guided by the level of understanding of people with full elementary education.
8. To give historical explanations to rules, in the form of notes, without sacrificing scientific accuracy to ease of understanding, but at the same time without going into excessive detail and highly specialized explanations.

A prominent member of the Ukrainian Academy of Sciences and the Minister of Education of the Ukrainian S.S.R. largely responsible for this "Правіс" was the well-known poet, Pavlo Tychyna (Павло Тичіна), one of the numerous writers of Ukraine who should be more widely known abroad. Another great poet and academician was Maksym Ryl's'ky (Максім Рільський), whose development from neo-classicism to Soviet modernism any student from the West will find interesting to follow.

In the Second World War Ukraine suffered and was devastated as terribly as any land in Europe, and her people were stirred to superhuman efforts. These will doubtless leave their traces in subsequent Ukrainian literature and in the development of the language. The student can but be encouraged to explore the new literature and keep his mind sympathetic and receptive.

THE UKRAINIAN ALPHABET

Ukrainian

Approximate English equivalent

А	а	(more open and forward than) ah
Б	б	(unaspirated)
В	в	v ¹ (w after vowels, see Pronunciation)
Г	г	voiced h (see Pronunciation)
Д	д	d (dental)
Е	е	e in "bet"
Є	є	ye in "yet"
Ж	ж	zh, s in "pleasure" (hard)
З	з	z
И	и	i in "it" with tongue further back (see Pronunciation)
І	і	ee in "meet"
Ї	ї	ye in "ye"
Й	й	y in "boy", y in "yet"
К	к	k
Л	л	l in both "leaf" and "table"
М	м	m
Н	н	n
О	о	o in "for"
П	п	p (unaspirated)
Р	р	r rolled
С	с	s in "see"
Т	т	t (dental)
У	у	oo in "boot"
Ф	ф	f
Х	х	ch in "loch"
Ц	ц	ts pronounced together as in "bits"
Ч	ч	hard ch, as in "church" with tongue further back
Ш	ш	sh (hard)
Щ	щ	shch in "Ashchurch" (hard)
Ю	ю	u in "tune", "you"
Я	я	"yah"
(Б)	Ь	sign of palatalization or "softness" written after consonants

¹Often pronounced bilabially.

²Until recently, after Г, г followed І, і, pronounced "hard" g as in English "go" and like Russian Г, г. It occurred mostly in words of foreign origin and has now been abolished, Г being used instead in Soviet Ukraine, even though the pronunciation is [g] in such words. І, і is still used by Ukrainians in emigration.

³In older dictionaries Б, б came after И.

The apostrophé ' is used between a hard labial consonant or sometimes a hard *r* or *k* and a yotated vowel, also after prefixes ending in a consonant before a yotated vowel, to indicate a yot sound (English *y* in "yet"), like *ь* or, formerly, the apostrophé in Russian. e.g.:—

п'ять = five пір'я = feathers
б'ю = I beat з'єднати = to unite
Лук'ян = Lucian

The peculiarly Ukrainian letters are: Є, є, І, і (and formerly І', і'). І, і occurs now only in Byelorussian as well.

Old Slavonic letters not used in Ukrainian are: *s, k, ov, w, z, z', k, m, t, a, x, n, h, h, u, u*. Russian letters not used in Ukrainian are: *Ѣ, ѣ, Ѥ, ѥ, Ѧ, ѧ, Ѩ, ѩ, Ѫ, ѫ, Ѭ, ѭ, Ѯ, ѯ, Ѱ, ѱ, Ѳ, ѳ, Ѵ, ѵ, Ѷ, ѷ, Ѹ, ѹ*.

Serbian letters absent from Ukrainian are, of course: *Ђ, ђ, Ј, ј, Љ, љ, Њ, њ, Ћ, ћ, Ў, ў, Ц, ц*. The Macedonian letters *Ѣ, ѣ, Ѓ, ѣ, Ѕ, ѕ*, are also unknown to Ukrainian.

Ѣ and ѡ, although representing single sounds (English *j* and *ds* respectively) in uncompound words, are not regarded as separate letters. Thus in the dictionaries *джепелѡ* (= spring, source) and *дзвін* (= bell) both come under *д* in the usual alphabetical order.

PRONUNCIATION

The pronunciation of literary Ukrainian is fairly faithfully portrayed in its orthography with the few exceptions noted below. But the accent is not indicated, which causes difficulty to foreigners, as in Russian.

The *Accent* in Ukrainian is a not very strong stress accent, which may fall on *any* syllable of a word and is "free", i.e. it may shift from one syllable to another in the course of flexion, e.g.:—

робіти = to do, work плече́ = shoulder
роблю́ = I work, but—
робиш = you (sg.) на плеча́х = on (his) shoulders
work

The accent in Ukrainian is not always in the same position as in the corresponding word in Russian, e.g.:—

мали́й = small, Russ. ма́лый
ста́рий = old, Russ. ста́рый

All the *Consonants*, including the *chuintantes* ж, ч, ш, щ, have hard (or ordinary) and soft (or palatalized) versions. They are hard before the vowels а, е, и, о, у and before another hard consonant or finally. They (singly or in whole groups¹) are soft before the "soft" vowels є, і, ю, я and when в is written after them, which in Ukrainian occurs only after the dentals д, т, з, с, ц, н and л. Thus:—

ми́ть (= moment) is pronounced with a hard м: мiтѣ

but—

ми́й (= my) is pronounced with a soft м: miј

л is *hard* in ласка́вий (= friendly) and луна́ (=echo)²

but—

it is soft in лі́то (= summer)

р is hard in мо́ре (= sea)

but—

it is soft in рясні́й (= rich, abundant) and мо́ря (Gen. sg. = of the sea)

Similarly—

к is hard in кі́слий = sour, but soft in кiнь = horse	"	"	"	тютю́н = tobacco
т	"	ти = you, thou	"	"
г	"	гора́ = hill	"	гіркий = bitter
с	"	сбро́м = shame	"	свого́дни = to-day
ц	"	ці́ган = gipsy	"	ці́лий = whole; and— па́лець = finger

N. B.—In Ukrainian a soft ц survives, e.g. па́лець.³

All the *chuintantes*, including ч and щ, in contrast to Russian, are hard in Ukrainian, hence чай (= tea) sounds more like Serbocroatian чај (чай) than Russian ча́й (чай). But before і a softer version is heard, as in жі́нка (= woman), ші́сть (= six), ші́рка (= brush), слуха́чі (= listeners).

¹ E.g. in *шир* both с and н are soft, pron. *ʃɪrʲ*.

² Before е and и a medium л is pronounced, like in English 'let': ле́дце = hardly, phon. *ʎeɔvʲe*, лис = fox.

³ Scholars now consider that only the soft dentals д, т, ц, ѣ and also ж in Ukrainian are true palatal consonants, whereas soft *chuintantes*, labials and velars are 'half soft', and soft *ʃ*, *ʒ*, *ʒ*, *ʒ*, *ʒ* and long *ʒ*, *ʒ*, *ʒ* are 'palatalized'.

r is also no longer written after the *chuintantes* finally: ніч(= night), дощ (= rain). After the dentals named above it occurs medially as well as finally, as in сядьре (= sit down!), сьогодні (= to-day). In contrast to Russian single labials are soft only before *i*. Finally they are always hard: голуб (= pigeon), степ (=steppe), кров (= blood), сім(= seven). Before *я, ю, ї* and *є* they are always followed by *r* representing a yot sound unless they are preceded by some other consonant belonging to the root (except *p*); hence *є'є* (= he beats), м'який (= soft); свѣто (= holiday), but верб'я́ (= willows), and with prefix: зв'язати (= to bind together).

Soft *p* at the end of words and syllables, although heard in eastern Ukrainian, is not literary; hence the spellings—тенѣр (= now), тюрма́ (= prison). It occurs medially before soft (yotated) vowels: ря́бий = variegated, but in нір'я́ = feathers, the *r* is hard before the yot, phon. *ʃirja*.

л before soft *ц* is pronounced soft, as in *гáлци* = jackdaw (Dat., Loc. s.), сні́лци = union (D., L.s.). *в* has a third pronunciation besides the hard and soft versions noted above, namely that of English *w* or glide *u* (y) after (tautosyllabic) vowels both finally and medially before other consonants. This also applies to most initial *в*'s in consonant groups after a preceding word ending in a vowel. This pronunciation occurs regularly and is not properly indicated by the orthography. (Cf. Slovenian, Slovak, Lusatian and Byelorussian.) Thus:—

жив	= he lived is pronounced	з'і́в
п'ра́вда	= truth	'praŭda
вона́ впáла	= she fell	voŋa vpała

also written вона́ упáла.

(Compare the similar treatment of initial *i* described below under Vowels.)

(Hard *л* is pronounced as in Russian, with the tip of the tongue flattened against the front upper teeth and pointing downward and the front of the tongue spread and arched towards the hard palate, cf. English *l* in "table".)

Soft *т* and *д* are slightly sibilant as in central Russia.

Final voiced consonants remain voiced, e.g.:—

ді́д	= grandfather	ніж	= knife
скарб	= treasure	на́рѣд	= people

but in western Ukrainian they may become unvoiced, e.g.:—

сад ба́тьків (= the orchard of his parents) can be pronounced са́р ба́тьків.

Within a word or word group regressive assimilation takes place only if the second of two consonants is voiced. Thus:—

прóсьба	= request	is pronounced	прóсьба
боротьба́	= struggle	"	бородьба́
вокза́л	= railway	"	вог'за́л
хоч би́	= at least	"	ходж би́

Ukrainian *р* is pronounced like *h* in Czech and Slovak, i.e. like a *voiced h*, phon. *ɦ*. But the *unvoiced* counterpart of *ɦ* is *x*, as in Czech (and Slovak), e.g. *Bůh*, pron. *bu:x* (= God) and Gen. sg. *Boha*, pron. 'boɦa. Thus *легкий* (= light) is pronounced *lex'ki:j*, and *нігти* (= nails) is pronounced *niɦti*. *ř* used to be used to represent a hard [g], still so pronounced mostly in borrowed words such as *грати* (= grating), *гедзь* (= gadfly), *гуля* (= knob), *гáнок* (= porch, balcony).

Certain consonants can be written double and pronounced long, namely:—

<i>н</i>	as in	бажа́ння	= desire, wish, pron. ba'zannya
		здорове́нний	= "great big"
		па́нна	= maiden
<i>т</i>	"	життя́	= life
<i>д</i>	"	підборі́ддя	= chin
<i>ч</i>	"	Турече́чина	= Turkey

also *л, з, с, ц, ж, and ш*, mostly before the neut.noun ending *-я*.

The *Vowels*. From what has already been said above the reader will see that in Ukrainian, as in Russian, the pronunciation of consonants is inextricably bound up with the pronunciation of the vowels that follow, though the reverse is less true in literary Ukrainian.

Vowel letters indicating that the preceding consonant is not palatalized are: *а, е, и, о, у*, to which correspond the soft palatalizing vowels: *я, є, і, ї, ё, ю*. These soft vowels, when occurring initially in words and syllables, begin with a full yot sound, e.g.:—

¹The combination of soft dental + *j* + vowel, as in Russian *ко́рєнья* (= spices), *житьє́* (= life), is impossible in Ukrainian.

я pron. ja = I
 має " 'majε = he has
 i is then written ї, as in:—

її pron. ji'ji = her

The sound *jo* (ю, yo), like *ya* in English 'yawn', and corresponding to the Russian *ě*, is rare initially; it occurs, however, in the 3rd person Personal Pronoun, for example, and is then written *ю*: *юго* (= him). *ю* occurs medially mostly in foreign words: *серйбзний* (= serious), but also after vowels as in *чиюго* (= whose, Gen. s. m.), etc. *yo* is written after consonants: *льон* = flax, *всюго* = of all. *e* rarely occurs after consonants, except in adjectives, e.g. *синє* (= blue, Nom. sg. neut.). It occurs mostly initially in words and syllables after vowels and also after ' (the apostrophè): e.g. *єднати* = to unite, *має* = has, *б'є* = strikes (vb.).

In literary Ukrainian there is no obligatory modification of unstressed vowels comparable to that in Great Russian. Stressed or unstressed, the vowels may retain the same quality in careful speech.¹ a has a flat, open sound, as in Russian. Я represents the same sound preceded by *j* or palatalization.

e is open, as in English "bet" (preceded by a hard consonant!). It is a pure vowel in contrast to the Russian э (q.v.). ε represents the same sound, perhaps a little more closed, preceded by *j* or palatalization.

и is a sound of the type of Russian *ы* and the Polish *y*, but the tip of the tongue is more forward than in Russian. This makes it more similar to Polish *y*, and like the latter it is not diphthongal. The soft vowel corresponding to и is i, which is like *i* in English "machine"; it always causes palatalization of the preceding consonant; initially in words and syllables it can occur as *і*.²

¹ In normal quicker speech, unstressed o before a syllable with y can be pronounced more closed and then approaches y, e.g. *кожух* = sheepskin coat, *возуля* = cuckoo. Unstressed e can approach и, especially before syllables with и, y and i: e.g. in *несі!* = carry!, *несу* = I carry. Similarly unstressed и can approach e in pronunciation, especially before syllables with e and a, e.g. *живе* = (he) lives, *жива* = she lived. Interpalatal, centralised varieties of a and y can also be heard.

²But: *інший* = other, *їноді* = sometimes, etc.

o is similar to the English o in "for". It has less initial lip-rounding than in Russian, and never changes to a or e. The corresponding soft sound is always rendered by two letters, either *yo* or *ю* (see above).

y is pronounced with considerable lip-rounding as in Russian. ю represents the same sound preceded by *j* or palatalization.

й represents the *i*-glide (j) after, or yot before, vowels, as in *його* (= him) and *мий* (= my). Initial i is reduced to й in connected speech when preceded by a word ending in a vowel, e.g. *він іде* (= he is going), but *вона йде* (= she is going), or *він не йде* (= he is not going). The same applies to i (= and), which is not syllabic after a vowel; hence one writes and says *Орїна й Марїна*, but *Іван і Марїна*.

Vowel Alternations

As i represents etymologically in many cases a former o or e in closed syllables after the loss of a subsequent semi-vowel, we have i alternating with o and e in the roots of words in the course of declensions. These, by adding a final vowel, cause the preceding (originally closed) syllable to become an open one, e.g.:—

i/o кінь = horse, Gen. sg. коня
 ніч = night, " нощі
 мій = my, Nom. sg. masc., but моє Nom.
 sg. fem., etc.

also—

слів = of words, is the Gen.pl. of слово
 сіль = salt, has Instr. sg. сіллю but Gen.
 sg. солі, etc.

and—

робітник = workman, from робота = work
 Initially в is added, e.g.:—
 овес = oats, Gen. sg. вівса

i/e сім = seven, Gen. sg. семі
 осінь = autumn, " осені

Similarly—

сільський = of the village (adj.), from
 село

Many words with "polnoglasie", such as *молот* (= hammer), or those derived from words with former vocalic liquids or with *ь* or *в* as semi-vowels, such as *торг* (= bargaining, trade), or *сон*, Gen. sg. сну (= sleep) from *снь*, and *день*, Gen. sg. дня (= day) from *днь*, do not undergo this change in closed syllables. (But this does not apply to Genitive plural

forms: голова = head, G.pl. голів; доріг = road, G.pl. доріг; сльоза = tear, G.pl. сліз.)

Foreign words, too, do not know it, e.g. доктор (= doctor), студент (= student).

(The fill-vowels o and e in closed syllables also do not alternate with i.)

Sometimes analogy causes either the retention or the non-appearance of i where it might be expected: кінць = end, Gen.sing. кінця, зельнь = verdure, Gen. sing. зєлені.

THE UKRAINIAN DIALECTS

The modern division of the Ukrainian dialects is into three groups: (i) the Northern, (ii) the South-Western, and (iii) the South-Eastern.

The western frontier of the Northern dialects runs south from a point a little north of Brest to Volodymyr-Volyns'ky in Volhynia. From these points the Northern dialects stretch in a relatively narrow belt running E.S.E. south of Pinsk to Chornobyl' at the mouth of the Prypyat' on the Kiev 'inland sea' or reservoir, actually the Dniepr. East of the Dniepr their territory includes Chernihiv, Novhorod-Sivers'ky and Ryl's'k. Their southern boundary runs just south of Luts'k, Rovno, Novohrad-Volyns'ky and Fastiv (and north of Zhytomyr), then across the Dniepr about 50 kilometres south of Kiev to Pereyaslav-Khmel'nyts'ky, and then north-east to the east of Pryluky, Konotop and Ryl's'k. There is a small enclave of northern dialects to the south-west, south, south-east and east of Ostrogozh's'k, bordering in the south on the area of the south-eastern dialects.

The Northern dialects fall into three main groups: (1) the Volhynian subdialects, (2) to their east those of the west bank of the Dniepr, and (3) those of the east bank of the Dniepr.

The boundary between the South-Western and the South-Eastern dialects runs south from Fastiv, through Stavyshche, Tal'ne to Pervomays'k and then roughly south-west to a point just north of Tyraspol' in Moldavia.

The South-Eastern dialects stretch east of this line across the Dniepr and the steppes in the south, in the north to just south of Sudzha and Belgorod in Russian territory to Bohuchar and Morozovs'k (beyond the boundaries of the Ukrainian S.S.R.) and to beyond Luhans'k and Taganrog in the south-east. Their southern boundary is formed by the shores of the Sea of Azov and the Black Sea and include Kherson and Odessa. The Crimea, however, is not, in the main, Ukrainian-speaking territory. But a large region to the east of

the Sea of Azov is of mixed Russian-Ukrainian population as far south as Krasnodar, the middle point of the southern boundary. The eastern boundary of this area runs roughly south from the town of Azov to meet it east of Krasnodar.

The South-Eastern dialects are subdivided into four main groups: (1) the Middle Dniepr region subdialects, (2) the subdialects of the Poltava region, (3) the subdialects of Slobozhanshchyna to their east, (4) the subdialects of the vast steppe region to the south on both sides of the Dniepr, between the Dniestr and (nearly) the Don.

The western boundary of the South-Western dialects runs S.S.W. from Volodymyr-Volyns'ky, west of Nemyriv and Sambir to Uzhhorod. Their southern boundary runs first roughly in an arc bulging southward, to the south of Mukachevo, Rakhiv and Chernivtsi up to Mohyliv-Podil's'ky. From there it runs S.S.E., to the west of Balta to a point a little north of Tyraspol'.

The subdivisions of the South-Western dialects are the most complicated: (1) the whole of the northern part is covered by the Volhynian subdialects; south of these (2) in the west one finds the subdialects of the upper Dniestr, including the L'viv region, as far east as Husyatyn; on the extreme west of these are (3) the Syan River subdialects running in a narrow strip from Nemyriv as far as Sambir; (4) to the east are the subdialects of Podolia. The Carpathian region has four subdivisions: (5) the Northern Carpathian, (6) the trans-Carpathian region to the south, (7) the Western Carpathian (Lemky) region in Slovakia, (8) the Hucul' region in the east. (9) To the east of this are the subdialects of the Bukovina-Kuty region round Chernivtsi.

Modern literary Ukrainian is based mainly on the South-Eastern, Middle Dniepr and Poltava dialects with a considerable contribution, mainly lexical, from the South-Western dialects. The south-western region played an important role for Ukrainian particularly after the fall of Kiev in 1240, in the seventeenth century, and during the persecution of the language under the Russian czars in the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries (see Introduction). However, their most characteristic phonetic (e.g. *к* pronounced close [ç]) and morphological features (such as a conjugated past tense with personal endings, e.g. *мавем* for *я маю* (cf. Polish)) were not accepted in the literary language.

A feature of all forms of Ukrainian popular speech is the avoidance of the sound *f* (ф), admitted —only in foreign words—in literary Ukrainian. In the

popular speech it is replaced mostly by *xv* (pron. *x^u*), while *v* after vowels before voiceless consonants becomes *w* as usual (not *f* as in Russian). Many dialects also preserve the dual endings for feminine and neuter nouns after the numbers 2, 3 and 4, a feature no longer preserved in the literary language.

The Northern dialects have various vowels and diphthongs for what is in the literary language the *i* alternating with *o* or *e*, including the diphthong *yo*, as in Slovak, e.g. *кубнь* (= horse), while the *i* derived from *k* of the literary language is replaced by *ie*, *je*, *ji*, and even *e* in unstressed positions, e.g. *лиєс* (= a wood), *сјєно* (= hay), *дјіўка* (= girl), *бежійть* (= runs). They also have prepalatalizing *i* for literary *и*, and unstressed *o* can become *u* (*y*) as in Bulgarian, e.g. *муй* (for *мой*) (= my, Nom. plur.).

The Carpathian dialects unvoice final voiced consonants, as in Polish, Russian, etc., distinguish original *ы* and *и*, as in Russian and Byelorussian, and alternate various vowels other than *i* with *e* and *o*.

Other dialects in the various groups have only one (medium) *l*, as in Czech and Serbocroatian, a hard *ц*, and a *p* (*r*) hard in all positions.

South-Eastern Ukrainian, which is taken as the basis of the literary language, has more features in common with Russian. South-Western Ukrainian, on the other hand, is much more strongly influenced by Polish, as one would expect, and with its dialects, forms, in some ways, a transition to that language. Thus in phonetics, soft *s* and *z* in Western Ukrainian approach Polish *ś* and *ź*. In vocabulary Western Ukrainian has more borrowings from Polish. Thus one can hear *перепрбшю* for "I beg your pardon", cf. Polish *przepraszam*. The influence of Polish culture and language has left traces on the whole of the Ukrainian language, thereby differentiating it further from Russian, which has fewer traces of Polish.

VOWEL GRADATION AND VOWEL LENGTHENING

As in other Slavonic languages, traces of vowel gradation and vowel lengthening can be seen in Ukrainian. As examples of the former we have:—

умєрти = to die (Pfv.), умрў = I shall die;
уморїти = to kill

дух = spirit; віддихати = to take breath (Impfv.).
відітхнути = to take breath (Pfv.)

брати = to take, берў = I take

As examples of vowel lengthening we have:—

умрў = I shall die (Pfv.); умирати = to die (Impfv.).
вїбрати = to choose (Pfv.); вибирати (Impfv.).
тектї = to flow; тїкати = to flee
ломїти = break (Impfv.); ламати (Freq.)
чекати = to wait; очїкувати = to expect
послати = to send (Pfv.); посилати (Impfv.)

SLAVONIC CHARACTERISTICS

1. The Slavonic metathesis of liquids is replaced by "polnoglasie", as in Russian. Thus we have:—

гблос = voice ворота = gate
ббер = beach молоко = milk

(Parallel Church Slavonic loan words are rarer in Ukrainian than in Russian. Ukrainian prefers солдкий for "sweet", собом for "shame").

2. The 1st Palatalization: *к*, *г*, *х* changing to *ч*, *ж*, *ш*, respectively:—

пектї = to bake, печє = bakes, hence by analogy
печў = I bake,
стерегтї = to guard, стережє = guards, стережў
I guard, etc.
страх = terror, страшнїй = terrible.

2а. *ц* also changes to *ч*, as in:—

мїсяць = moon, month, мїсячнїй = monthly

3. The 2nd Palatalization is fully alive in Ukrainian, in contrast to Russian, *к*, *г*, *х* changing to *ц*, *з*, *с*, e.g.:—

рукá = hand: Dat., Loc. sg. руцї
ногá = foot: Dat., Loc. sg. носї
кожўх = fur coat: Loc. sg. кожўсї

4. The influence of the *j* element ("yotation"):—

к, *г*, *х* change to *ч*, *ж*, *ш* (as in 1st Palatalization):—

стругати = to plane, стругў (1st pers. sg. Pres.)

плáкати = to weep, плáчу (1st pers. sg. Pres.)
коликáти = to sway, колишў (1st pers. sg. Pres.)

т, *д* change to *ч*, and *ж* or *дж* (the last mainly in verbs—a peculiarity of Ukrainian and Byelorussian):—

світити = shine, свічу (1st pers. sg. Pres.) (but світиш 2nd sg.)

межа (<C.S. medja) = boundary but also—

ходити = to go, ходжу (1st pers. sg. Pres.)

с, з change to ш, ж:—

писати = to write, пишу (1st pers. sg. Pres.), пишеш (2nd sg.), etc.

мазати = to smear, мажу (1st pers. sg. Pres.)

н, л, р become palatalized:—

орати = to plough, орб (1st pers. sg. Pres.), but ореш with hard р!

колоти = to prick, колю (1st pers. sg. Pres.), but коlesh (medium л!)

п, б, в, м add a palatalized л, which appears in the 3rd pers. *plur.* of the Present tense of i-verbs as well as in the 1st pers. sing:—

топяти = to heat, 1st sg. Pres. (я) топлю, 3rd pl. (воні) топлять

любити = to love, 1st sg. Pres. (я) люблю, 3rd pl. (воні) люблять

ловити = to catch, 1st sg. Pres. (я) ловлю, 3rd pl. (воні) ловлять

терпіти = to suffer, 1st sg. Pres. (я) терплю, 3rd pl. (воні) терплять

ст, зд change to ш, ждж (the latter a peculiarity of Ukrainian and Byelorussian):—

пустити = to allow, let go (Pfv.), 1st sg. Fut. пущу

їздити = to ride, 1st sg. Pres. їжджу

ск also changes to ш:—

плескати = to splash, clap, 1st sg. Pres. плещу

зк changes to жч:—

брязк = ringing (sound of metal), бряжчати = to ring

5. Disappearance of consonants at various stages in the life of the language:—

сон = sleep, from the old Indo-European root *sup-*

т dropped in:—

щасливий = happy, cf. щастя = happiness
існуювати = to exist, cf. істота = a being

пéрсня Gen. sg. of пéрстенъ = a ring
міський = urban, cf. місто = town,
місце = place

т is dropped in *pronunciation only* before the endings -ський, -ство, e.g.:—

турістський = tourist (adj.) is pronounced туріський
студéнтський = student (adj.) is pronounced студéньський
студéнтство = students (coll.) is pronounced студéнство

So also in the ending -стці, e.g. невістці = daughter-in-law (Dat., Loc. sg.)

к dropped in:—

тиснути = to press, cf. тиск = pressure
брязнути = to splash, cf. брязка = a splash
д dropped in:—

тіжня, Gen. sg. of тиждень = week
пізно = late
сэрце = heart

д is dropped in *pronunciation only* in the ending -зди, e.g. поїзди = trip, journey (Dat., Loc. sg.)

л dropped in:—

умісний = intentional, cf. мисль = thought
сбнце = sun

6. Epenthetic н is used in the oblique cases of the 3rd person Personal Pronoun after prepositions governing them, e.g.:—

до нього = to him

Prothetic в is very frequent, e.g.:—

вівца́ = sheep від = from
він = he, вузька́ вулиця́ = a narrow
вона́ = she street

Prothetic г (phon. ґ) occurs in горі́х = nut,
го́стрий = sharp, гарбу́з = pumpkin, Га́нна
= Anne.

FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF UKRAINIAN

1. C.S./O.S. *ѣ* represented by *i*:—
діло = a work біс = devil
2. C.S./O.S. *о* in closed syllables changed to *i* after the loss of a final semivowel:—
під = under ніс = nose
3. C.S./O.S. *е* in closed syllables also changed to *i* after the loss of a final semivowel:—
лід = ice сім = seven
4. C.S./O.S. *и* and *ы* both give Ukrainian *и* (pronounced like a fronted *і*—see Pronunciation above, p. 106).
син = son, cf. сіній = blue, cf. Russian
Russian сын сіній
5. *е* and *и* "hard", i.e. do not cause palatalization of the preceding consonant:—
несу́, pron. ne'su = I carry, cf. Russ. несú,
pron. nɛ'su
лѣбѣць, pron. lɛ'bjɛtɕ = swan, cf. Russ. лѣбедь,
pron. lɛ'bjɛtɕ
дѣво, pron. dɛ'vo = wonder, cf. Russ. дѣво,
pron. dɛ'vo
6. C.S./O.S. endings -ьць, -ьца, -ица kept soft, hence Ukrainian—
отець = father, Gen.sg. вітця́, cf. Russ. отѣц,
отца́
вівця́ = sheep, cf. Russ. овца́
темніця = prison, cf. Russ. темніца
7. Adjectival ending derived from C.S. -ьскъ has soft *с* in Ukrainian:—
зѣмський = land (adj.) польський = Polish
8. C.S./O.S. -ьє for neuter nouns (Nom. sing.) appears as -я in Ukrainian (cf. Russ. -ье and -ие):—
писання = writing, cf. Russ. писание
життя́ = life, cf. Russ. жизнь
збільшення = increase
9. Clear pronunciation of *о* ("okanie"):—
говорити pron. hovo'riti = to speak, cf. Russ.
говорить pron. go'vɪtʲ

10. Infinitive ending -ти:—

говорити

11. Masculine singular form of Past tense for most verbs in -в: пита́в= asked, хвали́в= praised, був = was.
12. Within a word (but not in word juncture) the fricative *chuintantes* ш and ж (and the affricate ч) are assimilated (in pronunciation only) to the corresponding soft sibilants *ç* [ʃ] and *ç* [ʒ] (and ч becomes soft ц' [ʃ]) before a following soft *ç* or *ц*; e.g.:—

купля́вся = you bathe, pron. ku'pajɛʃʂa
на поду́шці = on the pillow, pron. na po'duʃtɕi
не порі́жся = don't cut yourself, pron. ne po'riʒʂa
кни́жці = to the book, pron. 'knizʒtɕi
не му́чя = don't worry!, pr. ne 'muʃʂa or ne 'muʃʂa
до́чці = to the daughter (Dat. sg.), pron.
'doʃtɕi (cf. Byelorussian, p. 195, No. 4).

13. A feature of Ukrainian, shared with Polish, and not occurring consistently, is the occurrence of *о* for an original *е* after a *chuintante* or *й* before a hard consonant or syllable; hence:—

жона́тий = married, cf. женіти = to marry, and
Pol. żona = wife
чолові́к = man, cf. Russ. человек
шбстий = sixth, cf. Gen.sg. шестій = of six, Pol.
szósty = sixth
його́ = him, it, Acc., Gen. sg. of він and вона́

FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF UKRAINIAN,
ALSO TO BE FOUND IN BYELORUSSIAN

14. C.S./O.S. *г* written *г* and pronounced *ɦ* (voiced), e.g.:—
гора́ pron. ho'ra = hill, cf. Russ. гора́ pron.
га'ra (This is also a feature of southern Great Russian dialects.)
15. C.S. *đ* + *j* often changes to *дж*:—
суджу́ = I judge, cf. Russ. сужу́, O.S.
сѣжаж
16. *в* after vowels finally in words and syllables pronounced *ɦ*:—
кров pron. kroʊ = blood cf. Russ. кровь
пра́вда " 'praʊda = truth " пра́вда
пішбв " Bi'jov = he went " пішбв
(N.B. -ов< -ол! fem. пішла́)

17. C.S. рь, рь and ь, ь develop into ри, ли in unstressed syllables:—

кривáвий = bloody cf. Russ. крова́вый
дрижа́ти = to tremble " дрожа́ть
глыта́ти = to swallow " глота́ть

18. Doubling of single, soft consonants before C.S./O.S. -ьj-:—

бра́ття = brothers, ходи́ння = going
cf. Russ. бра́тья лья́ти = to pour, O.S.
життя́ = life -льяти

19. Initial unaccented i and y reduced to й and ь (written в) when the preceding word ends in a vowel and when followed by a single consonant:—

Прийшо́в учи́тель до вчи́теля = one teacher came to another teacher

Приби́г¹Ива́н до Ива́на = John came running to John

Вона́ йде́ = she is going

The same applies to i (= й) = and, and y (= в) in:—

But— брат¹ i сестра́ = brother and sister
сестра́ й брат

він у ха́ті = he is in the cottage

But— вона́ в ха́ті = she is in the cottage

20. Loss of soft labials:—

го́луб = pigeon, cf. Russ. го́лубь
сім = seven " семь
п'ю́ (pron. pju) = I drink " пью́

21. Spread of ending in -iv for Gen. plur. of nouns:—

ха́тів from ха́та =house, cottage
почу́тів " почу́ття́ (neut.sg.) = feeling
матері́в " ма́ти = mother

22. Preservation of the Vocative case in the singular of masc. and fem. nouns (see Morphology).

23. -мо as the ending of the 1st pers. plur. Pres. tense (cf. Serbocr., Slovenian)²:—

несемо́ = we carry, cf. Russ. несём

¹ Before i in word juncture hard consonants usually are not palatalized.

² In modern literary Byelorussian the final -о only survives in the alternative forms дамо́ (=даді́м), ямо́ (=яді́м). (See p. 243.)

24. Formation of the Future tense of Imperfective verbs with the suffixes -му, -меш, -ме, -мемо, -мере, -муть (cf. O.S. ммж etc. = I take): читáтиму = I shall read, cf. Russ. я бу́ду чита́ть

25. -ть as the ending of the 3rd pers. plur. Present of all verbs and of the 3rd pers. sing. Pres. for i-verbs:— зна́ють = they know, ро́бить = he does.

FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF UKRAINIAN, ALSO TO BE FOUND IN GREAT RUSSIAN AND BYELORUSSIAN
(i.e. characteristics of the East Slav Group)

26. Development of the semivowels: ь into о, в into е:—

Ukrainian: сон = sleep, O.S. сонь
" увесь = all, " вьсь

27. Development of the nasal vowels: я into у, а into я:—

муж = husband
п'ять = five

28. "Polnoglasie":—

Ukrainian: молоко́ = milk, O.S. млѣно
бе́рег = coast " врьга
молоді́й = young " млаааз
дорогі́й = dear " арагаз

29. Initial je changed to o:—

Ukrainian: оди́н = one
озеро́ = lake

30. C.S. t + j becomes ч:—

верти́ти = to turn, 1st pers. sg. Pres.
верчу́ <*верт-јж

31. e and o the fill-vowels: e.g. in Gen. plur.:—

вікон = of windows, Nom. sg. вікно́
земель = of lands " " земля́
книжок = of books " " кни́жка
вбєн = of wars " " війна́

32. Use of Gen. plur. for Acc. plur. for animate nouns (but usually not for the names of domestic animals, in contrast to Russian):—

бачу́ люде́й (or жінок) = I see people (or women)

And usually—

бачу́ блені́в, жу́ків, горо́бців = I see the stags, beetles, sparrows

but пасу́ воли́ = I am grazing the oxen

MORPHOLOGY

DECLENSION OF NOUNS

Ukrainian, like other Slavonic languages, has three genders for nouns, and has two numbers, singular and plural, having lost the dual, except for a few relics. There are seven cases; the Vocative has a separate form in the singular of masculine and feminine nouns, otherwise it is the same as the Nominative.

As in Russian, there are hard and soft varieties of declensions, the soft really having the same endings as the hard but with the corresponding soft vowels. Nouns whose stems end in a *chuintante* are called mixed: after ж, ч, ш, щ, а and у are written of the hard vowels and i of the soft vowels, but e replaces o and i replaces u; in the Vocative singular masculine -y is preferred.

The declensions can be divided into the same four categories as in Russian and Serbocroatian, i.e.:

- i-stems—feminine,
- consonant stems—neuter,
- a-stems—mainly feminine,
- o-stems—subdivided into masculine and neuter.

The old (short) ŷ-stems have left numerous traces mainly in the declension of the masculine o-stems, e.g. in the Gen., Dat. and Loc. sing. and Gen. plural.

As in other Slavonic languages, the Accusative singular of masculine animate nouns is the same as the Genitive, while that for inanimate nouns is usually the same as the Nom. But in Ukrainian the Genitive form of the Accusative has been extended to many inanimate nouns—a peculiarity of Ukrainian, e.g.:

прах поцїстив нїса = the bird cleaned its bill

As in Russian, the use of the Genitive for the Accusative in the plural has been extended from the masculine animate nouns to the feminine and even to the neuter animate nouns; but *not* to the names of domestic animals.

In the Dat., Instr. and Loc. plural the feminine endings -ам, -ами, -ах (-ям, -ями, -ях for soft stems) have been extended to the declensions of all genders.

The Genitive plural ending in -ів has been extended to some feminine and neuter nouns as well (See "Features Characteristic of Ukrainian" No. 21).

Peculiar to Ukrainian declensions are the neuter ending in -я and the pluralia tantum in -и. The behaviour of the consonantal declension should also be

noted.

1. *i*-stems, feminine only (soft, ending in -ь or a *chuintante*).

радість = joy

Sing.

Nom.	радість	радість
Gen.	радістї	радістїй
Dat.	радістї	радістїм
Acc.	радість	радістї
Instr.	радістїю	радістїями
Loc.	радістї	радістїях
Voc.	радісте	

Notice the vowel alternations i/o and i/e in: нїч (=night), Gen. Dat. Loc. sg.: нїчі, Instr. sg.: нїчю; Nom. Acc. pl.: нїчі, Gen. pl.: нїчї, Dat. pl. нїчам, etc.; пїч (=matter, thing), Gen. Dat. Loc. sg. пїчі, etc.

In the Instr. sg. before -ю a stem ending in a single consonant, except щ, р or a labial, has it doubled, e.g.:

тїнь = shade, Instr. sg. тїнню
підорож = journey, " " підорожжю

Labials and p take an ' (apostrophè) instead, e.g.:

люббв = love, Gen. sg. люббві, Instr. sg. люббв'ю
кїновар = cinnabar, Instr. sg. кїновар'ю

щ remains:—

нїхворощ = wormwood, Instr. sg. нїхворощю

Notice that путь = road, is feminine in Ukrainian.

A special pluralia tantum category, regarded as separate nouns, exists:—

Nom./Acc.	радощї	= joys
Gen.	радощїв	
Dat.	радощїам	
Instr.	радощїами	
Loc.	радощїах	

So also:—

ласоцї	= sweetmeats	лїноцї	= lazy habits
хїтроцї	= ruses	молодоцї	= one's young years, etc.

2. Consonant stems, with -н- and -т-. Neuters only.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	ім'я, іменá	іменá
Gen.	імен, ім'я	імен
Dat.	імені	іменáм
Acc.	ім'я	іменá
Instr.	іменем, ім'ям	іменáми
Loc.	імені	іменáх
Voc.	= Nom.	

курча́ = chicken

Nom.	курча́	курча́та
Gen.	курча́ти	курча́т
Dat.	курча́ті	курча́там
Acc.	курча́	курча́т(а)
Instr.	курча́м (only)	курча́тами
Loc.	курча́ті	курча́тах
Voc.	= Nom.	

Like курча́ are declined all nouns denoting young creatures, e.g.:--гуся́ (= gosling), Gen. sg. гуся́ти, etc., substituting -ят- for -ат- in the ending.

For *all* neuter nouns Acc. sg. = Nom. sg. In the plural Nom. = Voc. = Acc., except for living beings which may have Acc. pl. = Gen. pl., e.g.: Acc. pl. хлоп'ят (= little boys), from хлоп'я́-- -ят/-ат obligatory for human beings, but not for animals.

Irregular -р- consonantal stem:--

ма́ти = mother

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	ма́ти	ма́тері
Gen.	ма́тери	ма́терів
Dat.	ма́тері	ма́терям
Acc.	ма́тір	ма́терів
Instr.	ма́тір'ю	ма́теріми
Loc.	ма́тері	ма́терях
Voc.	ма́ти	

3. *a*-stems, mostly feminine. As in Russian, the old hard stem endings have predominated in the Gen. sg., Nom. (and Acc.) plur. of the soft stems--hence -i. The ending -i also regularly represents in Ukrainian the old -і of Dat. and Loc. sg.

фа́брика = factory; робітні́ця = workwoman; наді́я = hope; пло́ща = area

SING.	<i>Hard</i>	<i>Soft: Cons. stem</i>	<i>Vowel stem</i>	<i>Chuintante stem</i>
Nom.	фа́брика	робітні́ця	наді́я	пло́ща
Gen.	фа́брики	робітні́ць	наді́й	пло́щ
Dat.	фа́бриці ¹	робітні́ц	наді́й	пло́щ
Acc.	фа́брику	робітні́цю	наді́ю	пло́щу
Instr.	фа́брико́ю	робітні́цею	наді́єю	пло́щею
Loc.	фа́бриці ¹	робітні́ць	наді́й	пло́щ
Voc.	фа́брико	робітні́це	наді́є	пло́ще

PLUR.

Nom.	фа́брики	робітні́ць	наді́й	пло́щ
Gen.	фа́брик	робітні́ць	наді́й	пло́щ
Dat.	фа́брика́м	робітні́цям	наді́ям	пло́щам
Acc.	фа́брики	робітні́ць	наді́й	пло́щ
Instr.	фа́брика́ми	робітні́цями	наді́ями	пло́щами
Loc.	фа́брика́х	робітні́цях	наді́ях	пло́щах

Like наді́я also go all fem. nouns ending in -'я, e.g.:--

сім'я́ = family

A few fem. *a*-stems have an affectionate Voc. sg. in -ю, e.g.:--

дóню! = daughter тьóтю! = Auntie
ма́туся! = mummy Га́лю! from Га́ліна

The Acc. plur. is the same as the Gen. pl. for animate nouns, as робітні́ць above, though for domestic animals the form of the Nom. is used as for inanimates, e.g.:--

гна́ти ві́вці, корóви = to drive (out) sheep, cows

Notice the appearance of fill-vowels in consonant groups in the Gen. pl., which has no ending, as in книжо́к (= of books). So also:--

мі́тел from мі́тла = broom
і́гор from і́гра = game
во́єн (and ві́йн) from ві́йна = war

The last example also shows the *possibility* of the vowel alternation o/i. So also:--

осба́ = person, Gen. pl. осі́б
дорóга = road, Gen. pl. до́рiг

¹Only velar stems undergo this change of consonant in the stem according to the second Palatalization (see P. lll, no. 3).

but—

істота = creature, Gen. pl. істот, etc.

A few *a*-stems have Gen. pl. in -ей:—

сім'я from сім'я = family
мишя " миша = mouse, Gen. sg. миші
свиня " свиня = pig
статя " стаття = article

The Gen. pl. in -ів of the masc. nouns has been extended to some *a*-stems too:—

хатів from хата = house, cottage, or хат
суддів " суддя = judge

A few *a*-stems have Instr. plur. in -ми:—

слізьмі as well as слъззами from слъззѧ = tear
свиньми " " свиньями " свиня = pig

The accent may shift in the course of declension, e.g.:—

стіна = wall, Voc. sg. стіно, Acc. sg. etc.

стіну, Nom. pl. etc. стіни

кнїжка = book, Nom. pl. книжки, Gen. pl.

кнїжок

душа = soul, Voc. sg. дүше, Acc. sg. дүшу,

Gen. Dat. Loc. sg. душі, Nom. pl. дүші, etc.

дитина (= child), дівчина (= girl, maiden),
людина f. (= person) have irregular plurals as follows:—

Nom.	діти	дівчата (cons. stem)	люди
Gen.	дітей	дівчат	людей
Dat.	дітям	дівчатам	людям
Acc.	дітей	дівчат	людей
Instr.	дітьми	дівчатами	людьмі
Loc.	дітях	дівчатах	людях
Voc.	= Nom.		

собака, Gen. sg. собáки (= dog), can be masc. as well as fem. in gender.

4a. Masculine *o*-stems. The soft and *chuintante* stem versions of this declension contain the endings regularly corresponding to those in the hard declension. The Dat. and Loc. sing. generally have the ending -ови (soft: -єви, -єви) from the old *y*-stems, as in the West Slav languages and in contrast to Russian. In the Dat., Instr., and Loc. plur. the originally feminine endings have been generalized for both masc. and neuter declensions.

робітник = workman; учитель = teacher; край = land, border; товариш = comrade

Hard: Cons. stem

SING.	робітник	учитель
Nom.	робітника	учителя
Gen.	робітника	учителя
Dat.	робітникові, -у	учителю, -ю
Acc.	робітника	учителя
Instr.	робітником	учителем
Loc.	робітникомі, -у	учителеві, -і, -ю
Voc.	робітнику, -ниче	учителю

PLUR.	робітники	учителі
Nom.	робітників	учителів
Gen.	робітників	учителів
Dat.	робітникам	учителям
Acc.	робітників	учителів
Instr.	робітниками	учителями
Loc.	робітниках	учителях

Vowel stem

SING.	край	товариш
Nom.	краю	товариша
Gen.	краєві, -ю	товаришеві, -у
Dat.	краю	товарише
Acc.	край	товаришем
Instr.	краєм, -ю	товаришеві, -і, -у
Loc.	краї, -ю	товаришу
Voc.	краю	

Chuintante stem

товариш	товариша
товаришеві, -у	товарише
товаришем	товаришеві, -і, -у
товаришу	

PLUR.	краї	товариші
Nom.	країв	товаришів
Gen.	крайам	товаришам
Dat.	краї	товаришів
Acc.	краї	товаришам
Instr.	крайми	товаришам
Loc.	краях	товаришях

Nouns ending in -ар or -яр can belong to the hard, soft or mixed (*chuintante*) type of declension:—

комунáр = comrade has Gen.sg. комунáра
Dat.sg. комунáрові or комунáру

секретáр = secretary has Gen.sg. секретаря
Dat.sg. секретарєві or секретаря

школя́р = schoolboy has Gen.sg. школяра
Dat.sg. школярєві or школяру
Instr.sg. школярém

The regular ending of the *Gen. sing.* is -a (for soft stems -я). The following categories of nouns have their *Gen. sg.* in -y (for soft stems -ю):—

(1) most words denoting any matter or material, e.g.:—

мед (also мід) = honey *Gen. sg.* меду
пісок = sand " " піску

but—

хліб = bread " " хліба

(2) most words denoting anything collective, e.g.:—

оркестр = class, gender *Gen. sg.* орду
оркестра " " оркестру
ліс = a wood " " лісу
університет = university " " університету

(3) most words denoting a space or place, e.g.:—

лу́г = meadow *Gen. sg.* лу́гу

(4) most words denoting a phenomenon of nature, e.g.:—

до́щ = rain *Gen. sg.* дощу́
холо́д = cold " " холо́ду

(5) most words denoting feelings, e.g.:—

гнів = anger *Gen. sg.* гні́ву

(6) most words denoting processes, states, qualities, formations, manifestations of communal life, generalities, abstractions:—

біг = running *Gen. sg.* бі́гу
ритм = rhythm " " рі́тму
соціалі́зм = socialism " " соціалі́зму

(7) most words with prefixes, but no suffixes:—

при́клад = example *Gen. sg.* при́кладу
обі́д = dinner " " обі́ду
відпочи́нок = a rest " " відпочи́нку

but—

побі́зд = train " " побі́зда

and a few others.

(8) most compound words (formed from two nouns):—
водопрові́д = water mains *G. sg.* водопрові́ду

(9) some foreign words:—

орна́мент = ornament *Gen. sg.* орна́менту

(10) geographical names, except the names of towns, villages, etc., e.g.:—

Дуна́й	= Danube	<i>Gen. sg.</i>	Дуна́ю
Ура́л	= Ural mountains	" "	Ура́лу
Крі́т	= Crete	" "	Крі́ту
Іра́н	= Iran	" "	Іра́ну
Сибі́р	= Siberia	" "	Сибі́ру
Байка́л	= (Lake) Baikal	" "	Байка́лу

In the *Dat. sing.* the regular ending is -ови (-єви, -єві), except in:—

(1) nouns and names ending in -в and -ин, -ін, -ін, e.g.:—

рі́в	= ditch	<i>Dat. sg.</i>	рѐву
Ки́їв ¹	= Kiev	" "	Ки́єву
Га́ршин ¹	(a name)	" "	Га́ршину

(2) consecutive masc. nouns, one of which only has -ови (-єви); thus we should say:—

товари́шу Петро́ві (= to comrade Peter), or
товари́шеві Петро́у

In the *Loc. sing.*, of the three alternative endings -ови (-єви, -єві), -ю (-ю) and -і (-ї), the first is used largely for animate nouns, but not exclusively so. Of the remainder—

(1) nouns ending in -к require the -у ending, e.g.:—

у мішкѐу = in the sack, from мішѐк

(2) those monosyllabic nouns which have their *Gen. sg.* ending in -у, -ю (unstressed) have their *Loc. sg.* in -у, -ю stressed, e.g.:—

сте́п = steppe, *Gen. sg.* сте́пу, *Loc. sg.* у сте́пу

(3) inanimate nouns without suffixes usually have the ending -і (before which velars undergo the 2nd Palatalization as in the *a*-stems!), e.g.:—

¹ In the *Instr. sing.* *place* names in -в, -н, and -ськ have the ending -ом, but *surnames* have -им (the adjectival ending): Ки́євом, but Га́ршиним. Yet surnames have -и (not -і) in the *Nom. pl.*: Га́ршини (see p. 127).

бéрег = shore, Loc. sg. на бéрези (and на бeрeгý)

The preposition "по" when meaning "about" (of extent in space) requires the Loc. sg. ending -у:—

по лісу = about the forest¹

but when it means "after" it requires -и in the Loc. sg.:—

по обіді = after dinner

In the *Voc. sing.* hard stems regularly have -e, before which the 1st Palatalization of velars takes place, as in Serbo-cr., etc., e.g.:—

друг = friend, Voc. sg. друже!

So also nouns in -ець, e.g.:—

хлопець = boy, Voc. sg. хлопце!

But most nouns ending in -к or a *chuintante* have -у, e.g.:—

синóк = sonny Voc. sg. сінку!

товáриш = comrade " " товáришу!

Also—

діду! = grandfather!

сіну! = son!

тáту! = daddy!, from тато

Soft stems all have -ю, e.g.:—

учітелю = teacher!

Surnames ending in -в or -ин, -ін, but *not* place names, have a Voc. sing. like the Nom. sing.

Surnames, when preceded by a noun in the Voc., need not be put in the Voc. themselves, e.g.:—

товáришу Федорчук!

In the *Nom. plur.* nouns ending in -анин, -янин and -ин in Nom. sg. lose the syllable -ин- and end in -ани, -яни, or -и, e.g.:—

селянін = peasant Nom.pl. селяни

татáрин = Tatar " " татáри

хазяїн = master

Of the house " " хазяї

In the *Gen. plur.* these masc. nouns have no ending instead of the regular ending -ів, e.g.:—

селя́н = of the peasants

¹ But у лісі = in the forest.

A few other nouns also have no ending, e.g.:—
чобіт from чобіт = boot

день (= day), Gen. sg. дня has Gen. plur. днів as well as день after numerals.

In the *Acc. plur.* the names of domestic animals, although animate, have the same form as the Nom. plur. instead of the Gen. plur., e.g.:—

кóни = horses, not кóней (irregular)
волі = oxen, " волів

Masculine surnames ending in -в and -н have a special declension which is adjectival in the Instrumental singular and in the oblique cases of the plural, e.g.:—

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	Га́ршин	Га́ршини
Gen.	Га́ршина	Га́ршиних
Dat.	Га́ршину	Га́ршиним
Acc.	Га́ршина	Га́ршиних
Instr.	Га́ршиним	Га́ршиними
Loc.	Га́ршині, -у	Га́ршиних

4b. Neuter o-stems. These present far fewer alternative endings than the masculine o-stems. Nom. = Voc. = Acc. in the singular and plural, as in other Slavonic languages, Latin, Greek. The special declension of neuters ending in -я (from -ья) should be noted.

місто = town; місце = place; прізвище = surname;
питання = question

SING.	<i>Hard</i>	<i>Soft</i>
Nom.	місто	місце
Gen.	міста	місця
Dat.	місту	місцю
Acc.	місто	місце
Instr.	містом	міщем
Loc.	місті	місці
Voc.	= Nom.	
PLUR.		
Nom.	міста	місця
Gen.	міст	місць
Dat.	містам	місцям
Acc.	міста	місця
Instr.	містами	місцями
Loc.	містах	місцях

SING.	<i>Chuintante stem</i>	
Nom.	прізвище	питання
Gen.	прізвища	питання
Dat.	прізвищу	питанняю
Acc.	прізвище	питання
Instr.	прізвищем	питаннями
Loc.	прізвиці	питаннях
Voc.	= Nom.	

PLUR.		
Nom.	прізвища	питання
Gen.	прізвищ	питань
Dat.	прізвищам	питанням
Acc.	прізвища	питання
Instr.	прізвищами	питаннями
Loc.	прізвищах	питаннях

In the *Dat. sing.* only names and animate nouns ending in -ko have the ending -ovi, the latter as an alternative to -y, hence:—

Петрэнкові from Петрэнко

but—

дитяткові or дитятку from дитятко = a little child

In the *Loc. sing.* animate nouns in -ko have the alternative endings -ovi or -y, as in the *Dat. sing.*

Other nouns in -ko have *Loc. sg.* in -ку (not *-кі or *-ці), e.g.:—

у війську = in the army
на яблучку = on the little apple

The *Gen. plur.* regularly has no ending, except in:—

(1) some nouns with a stressed ending in the plural, e.g.:—

море	= sea	Gen.pl.	морів
поле	= field	" "	полів or піль
почуття	= feeling	" "	почуттів
відкриття	= discovery	" "	відкриттів

(2) nouns ending in -'я, e.g.:—

прислів'я	= saying	Gen.pl.	прислів'їв
подвір'я	= yard	" "	подвір'їв

¹After the preposition по with the meaning of 'over' other nouns also have the ending -у/-ю in the *Loc. sing.*: e.g. по бзєру = over the lake, по полю = over the field.

Double consonants become single before ь, as in питань above.

The vowel alternations o/i and e/i occur when there is no ending in this case, hence:—

слово = word has Gen.pl. слів
село = village " " сіл

But nouns in -ення do not have the vowel alternation, e.g.:—

значення = meaning, Gen.pl. значень

The fill-vowels o, e, є also occur in certain nouns, e.g.:—

вікно = window has Gen. plur. вікон
відрo = rail " " відер
яйце = egg " " яйць

око (= eye), плече (= shoulder), (в)ухо (= ear) have irregular plurals which decline as follows:—

Nom.	оці (вічі)	плечі	вуха	more often than	уші
Gen.	очей	плечей			
		or пліч	вух	" "	ушей
Dat.	очам	плечам	вухам	" "	ушам
Acc.	оці (вічі)	плечі	вуха	" "	уші
Instr.	очами or очима	плечами	вухами	" "	ушама
Loc.	очах	плечах	вухах	" "	ушах
Voc.	= Nom.				

чудо (= marvel) and небо (= sky, heaven) have an s (consonantal) stem plural: чудеса, небеса, with regular endings. Gen. pl.: чудес, небес.

THE NUMERALS

Cardinal: 1 is an adjectival numeral agreeing with the noun it qualifies in gender and case. Only the Gen. sing. fem. and the Instr. sing. fem. may have non-adjectival endings:— Gen. Однієї or Одної (cf. "Adjectives", pp. 137-139); Instr. Однією or Одною.

2, 3 and 4 are also adjectives and take their noun in the plural (as in West Slav languages) in the Nominative.¹ In the other cases they agree with their noun in case. We give their declension below. 5 onwards are treated as nouns and in the Nom.

¹For many nouns this form has the stress accent of the Gen. sg. and the old Nom. *čmal*, from which it is derived: e.g. брат brother, Gen.s.брата, Nom.pl. браті, but два брати; сестра = sister, Gen.s. сестри, Nom.pl. сестри, but дві сестри; вікно = window, Gen.s. вікна, Nom.pl. вікна, but три вікна

and Acc. are followed by the Gen. plur. In the oblique cases numerals and nouns agree in case.

The Accusative of all numerals, except одну (fem. sing.), is the same as the Nom. for inanimates and as the Gen. for animates, according to the familiar rule of Slavonic.

All the components of a compound cardinal numeral are declined.

Nom.

- 1 *Masc. Fem. Neut.* *Gen. sing. masc. neut.*
один одна *оного́, etc., as hard*
одно́ (or одне́) adjective
(Always finally stressed, except in *одному́* (Loc. sg. masc. and neut.) and *одні́ми* (Instr. plur.) as well as in the special fem. forms above. After a preposition the stress is on the first syllable.)

Nom.,

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|------------------|-------------|---------------|
| <i>Masc. Fem. Neut.</i> | <i>Gen./Loc.</i> | <i>Dat.</i> | <i>Instr.</i> |
| 2 два | двох | двом | двома́ |
| 3 три | трьох | трьом | трьома́ |
| 4 чоти́ри | чотирьох | чотирьом | чотирма́ |
| 5 п'ять | п'яти́ | п'яти́ | п'ятьма́ |
| | п'ятьох | п'ятьом | ог |
| 6 шість | шесті́ | шесті́ | п'ятьома́ |
| | шістьох | ог | шістьма́ |
| 7 сім | семі́ | шістьом | ог |
| | сімьох | сімьом | шістьома́ |
| 8 вісім | восьмі́ | сімьом | ог |
| | вісьмо́х | ог | вісьмома́ |

9-30 are declined like п'ять

- | | |
|------------------------------|---|
| 9 дів'ять | } |
| 10 десьять | |
| 11 одина́дцять | |
| 12 двана́дцять | |
| 13 тріна́дцять | |
| 14 чотирна́дцять | |
| 15 п'ятна́дцять ¹ | |
| 16 шістна́дцять ¹ | |
| 17 сімна́дцять | |
| 18 вісімна́дцять | |
| 19 дев'ятна́дцять | |
| 20 два́дцять | |
| 30 трі́дцять | |

¹Pronounced: [jɪs'nadʑatʲ, dropping the first т.

Gen./Dat./Instr./Loc.
сорока́

40 сорок

Gen./Loc.

п'ятдеся́т ог

Dat.

п'ятдеся́т ом

Instr.

п'ятдеся́тма́ ом

п'ятдеся́тмома́

- | | | |
|-----------------|---|----------------------------------|
| 60 ші́стдеся́т | } | 60, 70, and 80 are declined like |
| 70 сі́мдеся́т | | п'ятдеся́т |
| 80 ві́сімдеся́т | | п'ятдеся́т |

Gen./Dat./Instr./Loc.

дев'яно́ста

ста

100 сто

101 сто один

Nom./Acc. Gen.

Dat.

Instr.

Loc.

- | | | | | |
|----------------|---|------------|-------------|-----------|
| 200 дві́сті | } | двома́стам | двома́стáми | двохста́х |
| 300 трі́ста | | лі́ке | дві́сті | |
| 400 чо́тириста | | лі́ке | дві́сті | |

Gen.

Dat.

Instr.

- | | | | |
|--------------|-----------|-----------|--------------|
| 500 п'ятсо́т | п'ятисо́т | п'ятиса́м | п'ятма́стáми |
| | ог | | |
| | | | п'ятма́стáми |

Loc.

п'ятиса́х

- | | | |
|-----------------|---|---------------------------|
| 600 ші́стсо́т | } | 600, 700, 800 and 900 are |
| 700 сі́мсо́т | | declined like п'ятсо́т |
| 800 ві́сімсо́т | | |
| 900 дев'я́тсо́т | | |

1,000 т́сяча

declined like a noun

2,000 дві́ т́сячі

100,000 сто т́сяч

declined like a noun

1,000,000 мі́льйо́н

" " "

1,000,000,000 мі́лья́рд

" " "

Notice півторá (masc. and neut.), півторі́ (fem.) —indeclinable— + Gen. sing. = one and a half.

Ordinal: The Ordinal Numerals are adjectives and are all declined like hard adjectives, except трéти́й, трéтя, трéте, which is soft. (See under "Adjectives", below, pp. 137-139, for their declension.)

In compound Ordinals only the last figure is ordinal and is declined, e.g.:

в т́сяча дев'я́тсо́т трі́дцять дев'я́тому (році)
= in 1939

1st	перший, перша, перше
2nd	другий, друга, друге
3rd	третій, третя, третє
4th	четвертий, -а, -е
5th	п'ятий, etc.
6th	шбстий
7th	сьбмий
8th	всьбмий
9th	дев'ятий
10th	десятий
11th	одинадцятий, etc.
20th	двадцятий
30th	тридцятий
40th	сорокбвий
50th	п'ятдесятий, etc.
90th	дев'янобстий
100th	сбтий
200th	двохсбтий, etc.
500th	п'ятисбтий, etc.
1,000th	тїсячний
2,000th	двохтїсячний, etc.
1,000,000th	мїльйонний

Collective: The Collective Numerals: оббс and обїдва (fem. обїдвї) (= both) and двбс (= two) in their oblique cases have the same endings as the oblique cases of два, i.e. оббх, двох, etc.

трбс (= three) also has no oblique cases of its own, and is declined like три, i.e. Gen. трьох, etc.

The same applies to all the other collective numerals: чєтвєро, п'ятєро, etc., which in the oblique cases are replaced by the corresponding cardinal numerals.

They are used for masculine and neuter animate nouns and neuter inanimate nouns, considered as groups, and also with *pluralia tantum*, and take the noun in the Gen. plur.

Distributive: Distributive Numerals are expressed by по + Acc. except with 'one' which goes in the Dative, e.g. по двї кнїги = two books each, but по бдному = one each.

THE PRONOUNS

The pronominal declension in Ukrainian is important because it also gives a clue to the adjectival declension, as in Russian, for the adjectival declension is a continuation of the old definite adjective declension which was compounded of indefinite adjective + pronoun. It contains the following categories:

Demonstrative:	той	= that
	цей	= this
Interrogative:	хто?	= who?
	що?	= what?
Indefinite:	хтось	= someone
	дєхто	= some (people)
Negative:	ніхтб	= no-one
	жбдний...не	= not a single
Relative:	хто	= who
	що	= that
Possessive (pronoun-adjectives):	мїй	= my, mine
	наш	= our (s)
	їхній	= their ¹
Definitive:	вєсь (увєсь, вєсь)	= all
	сам	= -self
	кбжний	= each
	той сáмий	= the same
	їнший	= other, another
Personal:	вїн	= he
	я	= I
	ти	= thou

The declension of—

наш	= our
ваш	= your
який?	= of what kind?
котрий?	= which?
кбжен (or кбжний)	= each
жбдний (or жбден)	= (in negations) no, none
їнший	= other
всьякий	= every
всїлякий	= (of) different (kinds)
самїй, -á, -é	= alone (just)
сáмий, -а, -е and	= the very ...
сам, самá, самб, plur. (lit. lang.) самї	= -self, alone

is identical with that of the hard adjectives, q.v.

їхній (= their) is declined like a soft adjective.

There are no enclitic Personal Pronouns in Ukrainian. After all prepositions the stress of all

¹His, its = Йогб, her = її —Gen.sg. of 3rd pers. Personal Pronouns—are invariable, as in Russian.

finally stressed dissyllabic pronouns governed by them shifts on to the first syllable, e.g.:—

менé	= me	за мéне	= for me
чогó?	= of what?	від чогó?	= from what?
всьогó	= of all	з усьогó	= out of all...
томú (Dat.)	= to that	на томú (Loc.)	= on that...

The Loc. sing. of all but the Possessive Pronouns and я (мені), ти (тобі) and себе (собі) differs, therefore, *only* in the position of the stress from the Dat. sing. But in Gen. sing. the stress of pronouns used as possessives and occurring after a preposition remains on the last syllable, e.g.:—

до його́ дóму = to his house

As in the nouns, for the Acc. sing. masc. and the Acc. plur. of all genders Acc. = Nom. for inanimates and Acc. = Gen. for animates.

той = that

	SINGULAR		PLURAL
	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>All Genders</i>
Nom.	те	та	ті
Gen.	того́ ¹	тіє́й (тої́)	тих
Dat.	томú	ті́й	ти́м
Acc. = Nom. or Gen.	те	ту	= Nom. or Gen.
Instr.	тим	тією́ (то́ю)	ті́ми
Loc.	тому́ (ти́м)	ті́й	ти́х

Like той, the deictic отой = that there

цей = this

	SINGULAR		PLURAL
	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>All Genders</i>
Nom.	це	ця	ці
Gen.	цьогó ¹	ціє́й	цих
Dat.	цьомú	ці́й	ци́м
Acc. = Nom. or Gen.	це	цю	= Nom. or Gen.
Instr.	ци́м	цією́	ци́ми
Loc.	цьо́му (ци́м)	ці́й	ци́х

Before words beginning with ц, forms from сей are used: се цікаво = this is interesting, and in a few fixed expressions.

Like цей, the deictic оцей = this here.

¹ Concerning the stress in the Gen. sing. masc. and neut. after prepositions, see the paragraph above on pp. 133-134.

хто = who? що = what?

Nom.	хто	що
Gen.	кого́	чого́
Dat.	кому́	чому́
Acc.	кого́	що
Instr.	ким	чим
Loc.	кóму (кі́м)	чо́му (чи́м)

These can also be used as Relative Pronouns like the corresponding words in other Slavonic languages.

весь (увéсь, ввесь) = all

	SINGULAR		PLURAL
	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>All Genders</i>
Nom.	весь	вся	всі
Gen.	(увéсь, ввесь)	(усá)	(усі́)
Dat.	всьогó	всі́й	всі́х
Acc. = Nom. or Gen.	всьо́му	всі́ю	всі́м
Instr.	всі́м	всі́єю	= Nom. or Gen.
Loc.	всьо́му (всі́м)	всі́й	всі́ма́
			всі́х

Initial в alternates with у according to the general rule (see "Pronunciation").

	SINGULAR		PLURAL
	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>All Genders</i>
Nom.	моє́	мо́я	мої́
Gen.	мо́го	моє́ї	мої́х
Dat.	моє́му	мої́й	мої́м
Acc. = Nom. or Gen.	моє́	мою́	= Nom. or Gen.
Instr.	мої́м	моєю́	мої́ми
Loc.	моє́му (мої́м)	мої́й	мої́х

Like мій, твій = your(s) (sg.), свій = (my, your, his, etc.) own.

Notice also the declension of чий (= whose), which agrees with the noun it qualifies in gender, number, and case:—

	SINGULAR		PLURAL
	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>All Genders</i>
Nom.	чи́є	чи́я	чи́їх
Gen.	чи́ього	чи́їй	чи́їм
Dat.	чи́ьому (чи́ьому)	чи́ю	= Nom. or Gen.
Acc.	чи́ь	чи́єю	чи́їми
Instr.	чи́ьому	чи́їй	чи́їх
Loc.	(чи́ьому, чи́їм)		

The Personal Pronouns

він = he, вона = she, вони = it

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
Masc.	Fem.	All Genders	
він ¹	вона	вони	
його (нього)	її (її)	їх (них)	
йому	їй	їм	
його (нього)	її (її)	їх (них)	
ним	нею	ними	
ньому (нім)	ній	них	

Nom.	я = I	ми = we	ти = thou	ви = you
Gen.	мене ²	нас	тебе ²	вас
Dat.	мені	нам	тобі	вам
Acc.	мене	нас	тебе	вас
Instr.	мною	нами	тобою	вами
Loc.	мені	нас	тобі	вас

себе² = -self (Acc.), is declined exactly like ти, тебе.

The Indefinite Pronouns хтось and дехто are declined like хто, -сь being a suffix and де- a prefix. де- can be separated from хто by a preposition, e.g.:-

де на ко́му, as well as на де́кому

The separation is obligatory for pronouns with the prefix ні-, e.g. ніхто = no one:—

Gen. ні́кого Dat. ні́кому Loc. ні на ко́му

When the prefix ні- is stressed, this pronoun means, 'there is no one...', e.g. ні́кому да́ти = there is none (to whom) to give....

Notice also the declension of:—

скільки	= how many
кілька	= a few, some
декілька	= a few
стільки	= so many

which are declined like два (= two), e.g.:

скільки-о́х, -о́м, -о́ма

¹The forms beginning with н- are used after prepositions which govern the pronoun (i.e. not for pronouns being used as possessives). The Instrumental always has an initial н in Ukrainian.

²Concerning the stress in the Gen. (sg.) after prepositions, see the paragraph above on pp. 133-134.

кількана́дцять = a few (between 10 and 20)
кількаде́сят = a few tens of

which are declined like п'ять (= five).

бага́то (Nom. and Acc.) = many, has—

Gen./Loc.	багати́х
Dat.	багати́м
Instr.	багати́ма and багати́мама.

The indefinite pronouns якійсь = some sort of, and чийсь = some one's, in the Gen. and Loc. plur. have a fill-vowel -о- before the suffix -сь, i.e. якійсь, чийсь.

ADJECTIVES

Adjectives in Ukrainian are much simpler than in Russian. There are no separate predicative forms for most adjectives. It is true, a form ending in a consonant exists for the masculine singular only of just a few adjectives and this is mostly used predicatively; but it may be used attributively too, especially in poetry. The most common short forms are:—

варт	= worth, deserving	певен	= certain, sure
вінен	= owing, in debt	повен	= full
го́ден	= able, fit	повінен	= obliged to
зго́ден	= agreeing, in agreement	потре́бен	= necessary
гото́в	= ready	прав	= right
жив	= alive	непра́в	= wrong
здоро́в	= healthy	рад	= glad
зеле́н	= green	ста́р	= old
ладе́н	= ready	ясе́н	= bright, clear

The declension of the adjective falls into only two main classes:—

1. The hard stems, including all stems in velars and *chuintantes*, and irrespective of whether they are finally stressed or not. All possessive adjectives in -ів, -ин, -ін, etc., are also declined throughout like hard-stem adjectives and have no special short endings, in contrast to Russian.

2. The soft stems, (a) ending in a soft consonant, (b) ending in -j-. Into this class also fall the adjectives derived from the names of animals, such as бараний (= ram's).

1. гáрний = beautiful

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Neut.</i>		<i>All Genders</i>	
<i>Masc.</i>	гáрний	<i>Fem.</i>	гáрна ¹
Nom.	гáрний		гáрні ¹
Gen.	гáрного		гáрних
Dat.	гáрному		гáрним
Acc.	гáрне ¹		= Nom. or Gen.
Instr.	гáрним		гáрними
Loc.	гáрному (-ім)		гáрних

Like гáрний, all possessive adjectives, such as брáтів, брáтове (neut.), брáтова (fem.) = brother's, Gen. брáтового (masc. and neut.), брáтрової (fem.); доччйн, доччине́, доччйна́ = daughter's, (from дочка́); and from a soft stem: ковалів, ковалéве, ковалéва = blacksmith's.

Similarly all surnames in -ський, e.g.:—

Котляре́вський.

Before the adjectival ending -ський (and the neuter ending -ство) the combinations к, ч, ць + -ський, -ство give -цький, -цтво, e.g.:—

па́рубок = young man, adj. па́рубцький, noun па́рубцтво
ткач = weaver, " тка́цький, " тка́цтво
молоде́ць = young man, " молоде́цький, " молоде́цтво

but х, ш, с are dropped before -ський, -ство, e.g.:—

пта́х = bird; пта́цтво = birds
това́риш = comrade; това́риський; това́риство
= company

while г, ж, з before -ський, -ство give -зький, -зтво, e.g.:—

убо́гий = poor убо́зтво = poverty
Пари́ж = Paris пари́зький
бога́туз = coward бога́тузтво

Similarly also all Past Participles Passive:—

зрблений = done

¹Uncontracted endings in the Nom. (sing. fem. and neut. and plur.) and Acc. (sing. fem. and neut. and plural inanimate) occur mainly in poetry: e.g.—

Sing. Nom. f. гáрна́я, сíня́я, п. гáрнее, сíнее, plur. гáрні́ї, сíні́ї;
Sing. Acc. f. гáрну́ю, сíню́ю, п. гáрнее, сíнее, plur. гáрні́ї, сíні́ї.

2a. сíній = blue

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Neut.</i>		<i>All Genders</i>	
<i>Masc.</i>	сíній	<i>Fem.</i>	сíня ¹
Nom.	сíній		сíні ¹
Gen.	сíнього		сíніх
Dat.	сíньому		сíнім
Acc.	сíне ¹		= Nom. or Gen.
Instr.	сíні́м		сíні́ми
Loc.	сíньому (-і́м)		сíні́х

2b. безкра́йї = boundless

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
<i>Neut.</i>		<i>All Genders</i>	
<i>Masc.</i>	безкра́йї	<i>Fem.</i>	безкра́ї
Nom.	безкра́йї		безкра́ї
Gen.	безкра́йїого		безкра́їх
Dat.	безкра́йїому		безкра́ї́м
Acc.	= Nom. or Gen.		= Nom. or Gen.
Instr.	безкра́ї́м		безкра́ї́ми
Loc.	безкра́йїому (-і́м)		безкра́ї́х

Adjectives ending in -лий have a mixed declension in the singular, but in the plural follow the hard declension:—

SINGULAR		Fem.	
<i>Neut.</i>		<i>All Genders</i>	
<i>Masc.</i>	білолі́цій		білолі́ця
Nom.	білолі́цій		білолі́цьої
Gen.	білолі́цього		білолі́цьї
Dat.	білолі́цьому		білолі́цьо
Acc.	= Nom. or Gen.		білолі́цьою
Instr.	білолі́цї́м		білолі́цї́
Loc.	білолі́цьому (-і́м)		білолі́цї́

A few nouns of adjectival form are declined like adjectives, e.g.:—

буді́вний = builder
лю́тий = February

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

The Comparative degree of an adjective in Ukrainian is formed by adding either -і́ший, -і́ша, -і́ше, e.g.:—

но́вий = new; но́ві́ший

ог -ший, -ша, -ше, e.g.:—

сла́бий = weak; сла́бі́ший

¹See footnote on previous page.

1. гáрний = beautiful

SINGULAR		PLURAL
Masc.	Neut.	All Genders
гáрний	гáрне ¹	гáрні ¹
гáрний	гáрне ¹	гáрних
гáрному	гáрну ¹	гáрним
гáрним	гáрню	гáрними
гáрному (-ім)	гáрній	гáрних

Like гáрний, all possessive adjectives, such as брáтів, брáтове (neut.), брáтова (fem.) = brother's, Gen. брáтового (masc. and neut.), брáтovoї (fem.); доччйн, доччине, доччйна = daughter's, (from дочкá) and from a soft stem: ковалів, ковалéве, ковалéва = blacksmith's.

Similarly all surnames in -ський, e.g.:—
Котлярéвський.

Before the adjectival ending -ський (and the neuter ending -ство) the combinations к, ч, ць + -ський, -ство give -цький, -цтво, e.g.:—

пáрубок = young man, adj. парубцький, noun парубцтво
ткач = weaver, " ткацький, " ткацтво
молодець = young man, " молодецький, " молодéцтво

but х, ш, с are dropped before -ський, -ство, e.g.:—
птах = bird; птаство = birds
товáриш = comrade; товáриський; товáриство
= comrany

while г, ж, з before -ський, -ство give -зький, -зтво, e.g.:—

убггий = poor убóзтво = poverty
Пáриж = Paris парізький
боггуз = coward богузтво

Similarly also all Past Participles Passive:—

зрблений = done

¹Uncontracted endings in the Nom. (sing. fem. and neut. and plur.) and Acc. (sing. fem. and neut. and plural inanimate) occur mainly in poetry: e.g.—

Sing. Nom. f. гáрная, сіння, п. гáрнее, сінее, plur. гáрніі, сінніі;
Sing. Acc. f. гáрную, сінною, п. гáрнее, сінее, plur. гáрніі, сінніі.

2a. сінній = blue

SINGULAR		PLURAL
Masc.	Neut.	All Genders
сінній	сінє ¹	сінні ¹
сіннього	сінью ¹	сінніх
сінньому	сінню ¹	сіннім
сіннім	сінню	= Nom. or Gen.
сінньому (-ім)	сінній	сінніми
		сінніх

2b. безкра́й = boundless

SINGULAR		PLURAL
Masc.	Neut.	All Genders
безкра́й	безкра́с	безкра́ї
безкра́його	безкра́с	безкра́ї
безкра́йому	безкра́с	безкра́їм
безкра́їм	безкра́с	= Nom. or Gen.
безкра́йому (-ім)	безкра́ї	безкра́їми
		безкра́їх

Adjectives ending in -лийий have a mixed declension in the singular, but in the plural follow the hard declension:—

SINGULAR

SINGULAR		Fem.
Masc.	Neut.	
білолийий	білолице	білолиця
білолицього	білолицьому	білолицьой
білолицьому	білолицьому	білолицьой
білолицьому (-ім)	білолицьому (-ім)	білолицьою
		білолицьій

A few nouns of adjectival form are declined like adjectives, e.g.:—

будівничий = builder
лютий = February

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

The Comparative degree of an adjective in Ukrainian is formed by adding either -іший, -іша, -іше, e.g.:—

новій = new: новіший

ог -ший, -ша, -ше, e.g.:—

слабий = weak: сла́бший

¹See footnote on previous page.

to the root. The choice is just a matter of usage, and some adjectives can have either, sometimes with a difference of meaning: рідший = rarer, рідкіший = finer (e.g. mesh).

Most adjectives ending in -кий, -екий or -окий lose the -к-, -ек- or -ок- and then add -ший to the real root. Consonantal changes can then take place, -с-ший giving -щій, e.g.:—

далекій = distant, Comp. дальший
глибокий = deep, " глибокий
високий = high, " вищий

while -з-ший, -г-ший and -ж-ший all give -жчий, e.g.:—

вузький = narrow, Comp. ву́жчий
дорогий = dear, " дорожчий
дужий = strong, " дужчий

However, there are exceptions, e.g.:—

легкий = light, Comp. лёгший
гіркий = bitter " гіркіший
довгий = long " довгий
важкий = heavy " важчий
товстий = fat " товстий

A third alternative, especially for the less common adjectives, is possible, however: that of using більш (= more) before the Positive adjective, e.g.:—

більш відповідальний = more responsible
The Superlative degree is formed by adding най- to the Comparative, e.g.:—

найновіший = (the) newest
найслабший = weakest
найвищий = highest

Най- can also be prefixed to більш, hence:—
найбільш відповідальний = the most responsible

Notice the irregular:—

добрый = good	} кра́щий or	найкра́щий or
га́рний = beautiful		найліпший
злий	} = bad	найгірший
пога́ний		найбільший
великий = big		найме́нший
малий = small		

Comp.

Sup.

All Comparative and Superlative adjectives follow the declension of hard stem (Positive) adjectives.

"Very" or "extremely" is usually expressed by дуже, less frequently by the prefix пре-, e.g.:—
премудрий = very wise

"Than" = як or ніж taking the same case after it as before it, e.g.:—

він кра́щий як ти = he is better than you
or він кра́щий ніж ти

or else "than" can be translated by one of the following three prepositions:—

за + Acc. (lit. = beyond), e.g.:—

Чи на світі є кра́йна ще міліша за наш край?
= Is there in the world a land dearer than ours?

над + Acc. (lit. = above), e.g.:—

Він дорожчий мені над життям.
= He is dearer to me than life itself.

від + Gen. (lit. = from), e.g.:—

Вона́ (є) кра́ша від Га́нни.
= She is more beautiful than Anne.

Rather better = тріхи ліпший

Rather good = досить (or доволі) добрий

Rather fat = товстенький (affectionate,
= fat little...)

Less than = менше ніж (or як)...

The bigger, } що } більший, тим } ліпший
the better } чим }

As (big) as = так само (великий) як

As soon as = як- } -найскорше

As fast as = що- } -найшвидше

As possible = як- } -найшвидше

The very best = що- } -найшвидше

of all = сáмий найкра́щий (від всіх)

Too (long) = (за)на́дто (довгий)

The same as = той са́мий як

ADVERBS

Adverbs corresponding to hard-stem adjectives end in -о or -е, e.g.:—

дешево = cheaply добре = well
багато = much зле = badly
швидко = quickly

But adverbs corresponding to adjectives in -ний mostly in -о, e.g.:—

дивно = wonderfully гарно = fine

Note: навмисно or навмісне = on purpose

Adverbs corresponding to adjectives in -ський, however, take either the form:—

по-українському

or—

по-українськи = in Ukrainian

Adverbs corresponding to soft-stem adjectives in -ний end in -ньо, e.g.:—

достатньо = sufficiently

All Comparative and Superlative adverbs are the same in form as the Nom., Acc. sing. neut. of the corresponding Comparative or Superlative adjective, e.g.:—

краще = better найкраще = best

Those in -іше can drop the final -е, e.g.:—

частіш = more often

Adverbs of time, place, manner, etc. can have the most various forms and be derived from pronouns, nouns, numerals, etc.

Place:—

тут	= here	скріз	= everywhere
там	= there	всюди	= home (ward)
звідси	= from here	дому	= at home
звідти	= from there	інде	= elsewhere
туди	= thither	вниз	= down (wards)
сюди	= hither	внизу	= below
тудю	= that way		
вгору	= up (wards)		
вгорі	= above,		
	on top		

Time:—

незабаром	= soon	іноді	= sometimes
сьогодні	= to-day	іноколи	
тепер	= now	тільки то	= just
нині	= then	щойно	
тоді	= yesterday	допіру	= never
вчора	= to-morrow	ніколи	= by day
завтра	= every day	вдень	
щодня		все	= always
		завжди	

вранці	= at last	пітім	= afterwards
зранку	= at once, now	згодом	= later
ввечері	= at night	надалі	= henceforward
вранці	= in the evening	згодя	= in advance
ранком	= in the morning	міттю	= instantly
двічі	= twice	торік	= last year
улітку	= in summer	вчасно	= in (on) time

Manner (see also above on formation of adverbs):—

байдуже	= all the same	мигом	= involuntarily
нарочито	= on purpose	раптом	= suddenly
так	= thus	нішком	= quietly
абияк	= somehow	інакше	= differently
сидячи	= sitting	крадькома	= stealthily
лежачи	= lying	мовчки	= silently
нарізно	= separately	босоніж	= barefoot
гарязд	= well, skillfully		

Degree:—

вельми	} = very	взагалі	= in general
дуже		тільки	= only
багато	= much	майже	= almost
трохи	= little	звсім	= quite
лєдве	= hardly	принаймні	= at least
чимало	= considerably,	надто	= too much
	quite a lot	більш	= more
досить	= enough	менш	= less
дуже	= more strongly	дедалі	= further, ever
втрє	= three times		= more + Comp.
	as much	чимрѧз	= ever more
здебільшого	= mostly		+ Comp.
самє	= namely, just		

Interrogative:—

коли?	= when?	куди?	= whither?
де?	= where?	звідки?	} = from where?
чому?	= why?	(звідкіля?)	
чогó?	= what for?	(звідкіля?)	} (interrogative particle)
навіщо?	= how?	чи...?	
як?	= till when?	хібá...?	= ...really?
доки?	= how much?	невже?	= not... really?
скільки?			

Not = не, but "no" = ні, and "yes" = так.

CONJUNCTIONS

These have no special forms.

Coordinating:—

- i (й after a word ending in a vowel) = and
 та = and (indicating a closer connection); but,
 why!
 а = and (contrasting), but
 але = but
 (абб...) абб, (чи...) чи, (хоч...) хоч = (either
 ...) or
 теж, такбж = also
 проте = however
 ба = Well!, Just look...!
 як = as
 ніж ор як = than
 тобто = that is, to wit

то picks out the main clause, as in other Slavonic languages

- зате́ = but then
 одна́к = however

Subordinating:—

- бо = for
 тому́ що = because
 щоб = in order that
 що = that
 коли ор як = if, when
 якщб = if
 поки = until, while
 мов, (не)на́че = like
 бу́чим, ніби, якб́й = as if
 хоч = although
 так що = so that (consecutive)
 раз = since, once
 щбино ор ле́двє = hardly, as soon as
 скбро = as soon as, if only
 хай = even if; in order that

PREPOSITIONS

Prepositions in Ukrainian may govern one, two, or three cases with corresponding variations of meaning. Compound prepositions govern the case usually associated with their last component (except із-за and з-під), but adverbs used as prepositions all govern the Genitive. The plain Instrumental is used for "through", as in Czech: іду́ га́єм (I go through the wood). по- prefixed to prepositions of place indi-

cates a wider locality.

With Gen.:—

- без = without
 з, ¹зі, зо (із before words beginning with c or з, especially when followed by another consonant) = out of, off
 від (archaic: од) = from
 у² (в) = by, at
 для = for
 біля = by (the side of)
 до = up to, to
 крім = except, apart from
 після = after
 проти = against
 ра́ди = for the sake of
 се́ред = among
 за = in the time of (a king, etc.)
- блізько = near
 навколо = round
 між³ = among, between
 (з)-за́ = from behind
 з-під = from under
 коло = near, by
 уздовж = along
 опрі́ч = except
 кіне́ць = at the end of
 край = by

With Dat.:—

- к = to, towards (archaic)
 по = according to; по-мо́єму = according to me
 всу́переч = despite
 завдя́кі = thanks to

With Acc.:—

- у (в)² = into; on (of days)
 на = on to, for

¹Pronounced c [s] before unvoiced consonants: з тобто́ю = with you, pron. s to'boju. зі and зо are used before difficult consonant groups.

²With all its cases the preposition у/в alternates in spelling and pronunciation as follows:— у is written and pronounced as a full vowel between words ending and beginning with consonants; у or в are written and pronounced as *u* after a vowel and before a consonant; в is written and pronounced *v* between vowels and initially before a vowel. E.g.:—

Де́сь у хліба́х = somewhere in the corn

Ми булі́ у (в) са́ду = we were in the orchard

Була́ в Оде́сі = she was in Odessa

В оча́х його́... = in his eyes...

Forms ув, ви, and уві are also used; e.g. уві сні = in a dream.
³More rarely: межі́. Also помі́ж (collog. промі́ж).

кризь = through
 че́рез = through, because of; in (of time)
 про = about, for
 за = behind (motion), beyond; (in exchange) for; about, concerning; within (of time)
 під (to) under
 пе́ред (to) before
 над (to) above, (also in comparisons)
 між¹ (to) among, between
 по = for (to get), up to (of numbers)
 об = against, on
 повз } = past
 міжмо }
 п́о́за = (to) beyond
 з = about (of numbers, quantity)

With Instr.:—

з, ²зі, із = with
 пе́ред = before (rest)
 за = behind (rest); according to, by
 над(и) = over (rest)
 під(и) = under (rest); near
 між¹ = among (rest), between
 п́о́за = outside, beyond

With Loc.:—

у (в)³ = in
 на = on, at
 при = near, by
 о (об) = at (of time)
 по = among, about; after; according to, by

The verbal prefixes ви-, пере-, роз- and уз- do not occur as prepositions.

The prefix з- is written с only before к, п, т, ф and х, e.g.:—

сфотографува́ти = to photograph (Pfive.)

All other prefixes ending in a voiced consonant always retain it in spelling, and also in pronunciation, e.g.:—

ві́д-, об-, над-

¹ See footnote 3 on p. 145.

² See footnote 1 on p. 145.

³ See footnote 2 on p. 145.

The prefixes без- and роз- can be pronounced either без-, роз- or бес-, пос- before unvoiced consonants. Before *groups* of consonants these prefixes take -i- as the fill-vowel, e.g.:—

розісла́ти = to send round

THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS

In Ukrainian the five main classes of the verb of Old Slavonic, divided according to the terminations of their Present tense, are preserved more completely than in Russian, because Ukrainian still distinguishes -e from -je, i.e. in Ukrainian spelling: e (= phon. e) is distinguished from e (= je).

On the other hand Ukrainian, like Russian, has greatly simplified the tense system of earlier Slavonic, for it too has lost—as well as the dual number—the Aorist and Imperfect tenses and more (declinable) participles than has Russian, namely the Present and Past Participles Active for most verbs and the Present Participle Passive, besides the old Past Participle Active in -н. Like Russian, it has an (indeclinable) Present and Past Gerund. It also has a fully conjugated Pluperfect tense, like West and South Slav. But the Supine has been lost completely.

The Passive voice is expressed either by a reflexive verb, or by the verb "to be" with a Past Participle Passive, or by the impersonal use of the 3rd person plural, as in other Slav languages. A fourth alternative is the use of the neut. sing. of a Past Participle Passive (sometimes with бу́ло) and governing a direct object; cf. Polish. Thus we have such examples as:—

Він зве́рється¹ = he is called

¹The reflexive suffix -ся may be abbreviated to -сь after the Infinitive and all genders and numbers of the Past tense (but, for masc. sg., only after those verbs with Past tenses ending in -в). Е.g. узя́тись or узя́тися = to be taken, etc.; Past tense узя́всь or узя́вся, узяла́сь or узяла́ся, etc.; but only—стері́вся = he was watching out.

Before this termination, in the 3rd pers. sg. of the Present tense of -e- verbs (see below) the (lost) final -ть reappears, e.g.:

Зве́, зве́ or зве́ = he calls, but зве́мься, зве́мься pronounced with final long soft -ця [ʃ:a]. Similarly the ending -щся of the 2nd pers. sg. Present of reflexive verbs is pronounced -сся: учи́мся = you learn, pron. учи́ща (cf. p. 115, No. 12). The shorter -сь is more usual after Gerunds (see below).

Він був забитий = he was killed
 Його забили = he was killed
 Широку громадськість було озайомлено з проєктом
 = the general public was informed of the pro-
 posal

А їм неначе рот зашито = but they kept mum (lit.
 "to them as if mouth sewn up")

The only true simple tense in Ukrainian is the
Present (of Imperfective verbs) or Present-Future (fu-
 ture in meaning, of Perfective verbs). It has the
 following personal endings:—

Sing. 1 -у or -ю
 2 -ш
 3 no ending, or -ть for all i-verbs, re-
 flexive verbs and the "athematic" verbs.
 Plur. 1 -мо or -м
 2 -те
 3 -ть

The first three classes of verbs join the endings
 of the 2nd and 3rd pers. sing. and the 1st and 2nd
 plur. to their stems with the vowel -e- (stressed or
 unstressed), which appears as -e- in Class III after
 vowel stems. The fourth class uses in these persons
 the vowel -и- (-і- after vowel stems).

In the 3rd pers. plur. the joining vowel is -у-
 for Classes I-III (-ю- after vowels and in Class III,
 except after *chuintantes*), and -я- in Class IV (-а-
 after *chuintantes*).

(The few athematic verbs (Class V) are best
 learnt separately and treated as irregular verbs.)

Owing to the hardening of p and л before the
 phoneme e, verbs in Class III with stem in -p- or -л-
apparently belong to Class I in all but the 1st pers.
 sing. and 3rd pers. plur., e.g.:—

орб = I plough оремо 1st pers. plur.
 ореш 2nd pers. sing. опере 2nd pers. plur.
 оре 3rd pers. sing. орють 3rd pers. plur.

(Infinitive: орати)

Likewise:—

колб = I pierce, prick
 колеш 2nd pers. sing. } with medium л!
 коле 3rd pers. sing.
 колють 3rd pers. plur.

(Infinitive: колбти)

Velar stems of Class I A. a.¹, e.g. печé, перкты
 (= to bake) have, by analogy, transferred the 1st
 Palatalization also to the 1st pers. sing. and 3rd
 pers. plur. Present before the endings -у and -уть,
 where it is "unnecessary"; hence we have—

печу́, печу́ть
 могу́, могу́ть from могты́ = to be able

Labial stems of Class IV (A and B)¹ insert the л
 before the ending of the 3rd pers. plur. as well as
 before that of the 1st pers. sing. Pres., e.g.:—

любы́ти = to love, has люблѣ (1st pers. sing.)
 and люблять (3rd pers. plur.).

So also:—

терпы́ти = to suffer, has терплѣ, терпять.

(This л also appears in the Pres. Gerund:
 люблячи (= loving), the Pres. Participle: роблячий
 (= working), and in the Past Participle Pass.:
 люблений. See below.)

All *Infinitives* have been regularized in Ukrain-
 ian, the ending -ти being applied to all stems, e.g.:—

нести́	= to carry	сісти	= to sit down
терти	= to rub	лізти	= to climb
сікти	= to hew	кра́сти	= to steal
могты́	= to be able	па́сти	= to fall
волокты́	= to drag (Pfve.)	їсти	= to eat
лягты́	= to lie down		= to eat
			(Pfve.) etc.

As the Infinitive is no guide in Ukrainian for the
 formation of the Present, it is easier, especially for
 comparative purposes, to classify the verbs according
 to their Presents, with subdivisions according to
 their Infinitives, as in the scheme we use for Old
 Slavonic.

¹See p. 150.

Classification of Ukrainian Verbs according to their Presents, with Subdivisions according to their Infinitives

3rd pers.
sg. Pres.

Infinitive

- I. A. a. несе́ нести́¹
= to carry. Same stem in Pres. and Infin., consonantal stem.
- b. реве́ реви́ти
пливе́ плисти́
= to roar
= to float. Same stem in Pres. and Infin., formerly vowel stem.
- B. a. бере́ бра́ти
b. рве́ рва́ти
= to take. Infin. in -ати, consonantal stem.
= to tear. Infin. in -ати, originally a vowel stem.
- II. дві́не дві́нути
= to move (Pfive.). n-stem.
- III. Presents with -je.
1. Primary verbs.
A. a. зна́є² зна́ти
b. ме́ле молоти́
B. a. сі́є сі́яти
b. оре́ ора́ти
= to know. Same stem in Pres. and Infin., vowel stem.
= to grind. Same stem in Pres. and Infin., consonantal stem.
= to sow. Infin. in -яти, vowel stem.
= to plough. Infin. in -ати, consonantal stem.
2. Derived verbs. All vowel stems.
A. a. ду́має ду́мати
b. жовті́є жовті́ти
= to think. a-stem.
= to grow (or show) yellow. i-stem, from stem in -b-.

¹So also: пече́, пе́кати = to bake; умре́, умре́ти = to die (Pfive.); почне́, поча́ти = to begin (Pfive.).

²Similarly: чу́є, чу́ти = to hear, feel; ми́є, ми́ти = to wash.

- B. бу́дье будува́ти
= to build. -y- Pres. stem., -ува- (hard) Infin. stem.
горбе́ горюва́ти
= to sorrow, mourn. -ю- Pres. stem., -юва- (soft) Infin. stem.
IV. A. хва́лить хвалі́ти
= to praise. -и- throughout.
B. верті́ть верті́ти
лежі́ть лежа́ти
= to turn. -и- in Pres., -i- (from б) in Infin.
= to lie. -и- in Pres., -а- (from б after *chuintante*) in Infin.

V. Athematic -m verbs—only four roots (see below for full conjugation pp. 162-164).

дам (1st pers. sing.) дасть, да́ти = to give (Pfive.)
їм " " їсть, їсти = to eat

The Future Tense and the Aspects

There are two ways of forming the Future Tense for Imperfective verbs in Ukrainian. One way is, as in Russian, with the Future tense of the verb "to be" (бу́ти) followed by the Infinitive, e.g.:—

Sing. 1	бу́ду	писа́ти	= I shall write,
2	бу́деш	"	etc.
3	бу́де	"	
Plur. 1	бу́дем(о)	"	
2	бу́дете	"	
3	бу́дуть	"	

The more characteristic way, however, is by adding the suffixes: -му, -меш, -ме, -мем(о), -мете, -муть to the Infinitive. These suffixes are an abbreviated form of the Perfective Present-Future of the verb йняти, йму, etc. (= to take). Hence we have:—

Sing. 1	писа́тиму	= I shall write,
2	писа́тимеш	etc.
3	писа́тиме	
Plur. 1	писа́тимемо	
2	писа́тимете	
3	писа́тимуть	

The reflexive particle -ся is put *after* these suffixes, e.g.:—

писа́тимуться = they will play

The Future of Perfective verbs is Present in form, or in other words, the Present of Perfective

verbs is normally future in meaning, as in Russian and West Slav.

The Perfective form of a verb is sometimes represented by another form of the same root, e.g.:—

пускати = to allow (Impfve.), пустити (Pfve.)
 Future: пущу, пустити, etc.
 лягати = to lie down (Impfve.), лягти (Pfve.)
 Future: ляжу, ляжеш

Only a few verbs have Perfectives formed from a different root:

брати = to take (Impfve.), взяти (Pfve.)
 Future: візьму, візьмеш

ловити = to catch (Impfve.), піймати (Pfve.)
 Future: піймаю, піймаеш

Often -нути is added, e.g.:—

стукати = to knock (Impfve.) стукнути (Pfve.)
 Future: стукну

грямати = to bang, yell at, roar (Impfve.), грійнути (Pfve.)
 Future: грійну

Sometimes only the stress is changed, e.g.:—

здибати = to meet (Impfve.) здибати
 Pres.: здибаю
 викликаати = to call out (Impfve.),
 викликати (Pfve.)
 Future: вікличу

One of the commonest ways of creating a Perfective verb is by adding a prefix, e.g.:—

писати = to write (Impfve.),
 написати (Pfve.)
 Future: напишу, напишеш
 робити = to do, work (Impfve.),
 зробити (Pfve.)
 Future: зроблю, зробиш

In the few cases where the original simple verb is Perfective, the Imperfective is formed by changing the Infinitive ending or by lengthening the stem in some way, e.g.:—

купити = to buy (Pfve.) Future: куплю
 купувати = " " (Impfve.) Present: купую
 давати = to give (Pfve.) Future: дам
 давати = " " (Impfve.) Present: даю

Perfective verbs compounded with prefixes usually have such extended forms for their Imperfective aspects, e.g.:—

підписати = to sign (Pfve.) Fut.: підпишу
 підписувати = " " (Impfve.) Pres.: підписую
 відмінити = to change (Pfve.) Fut.: відміню
 відмінювати = " " (Impfve.) Pres.: відмінюю

(In contrast to Russian, Ukrainian has only two types of such extensions:—увати for hard stems, -ювати for soft stems, causing yotation for *z*-verbs: носити = to carry, виношувати = to carry, or wear, out. Frequentative verbs generally have these endings.)

But some merely change the ending to -ати or -яти, e.g.:—

позичити = to lend (Pfve.) Fut.: позичу
 позичати = " " (Impfve.) Pres.: позичаю
 розрізнити = to distinguish (Pfve.) Fut.: розрізню
 розрізняти = " " (Impfve.) Pres.: розрізняю

There are no regular ways of forming aspects from a given type of stem. The student should read widely and learn each verb in both its aspects and thus learn the usage for each verb by observation.

The Past Tense

The Past Tense in Ukrainian is formed by adding to the Infinitive less -ти (of either aspect) the following endings:—

-в for the masc. sing.
 -ла for the fem. sing.
 -ло for the neut. sing.
 -ли for all genders in the plural.

The *person* has to be indicated by a pronoun or noun, as this tense has no personal terminations (cf. English past tenses). On the other hand the termination varies according to the gender and number of the subject, this tense being derived from the old Past Participles Active in -ль. The masc. sing. is now spelt with a final -в which sounds as a final *y* or *w* (see "pronunciation" above).

As regards meaning, the Perfective Past indicates a completed action in the past, while the Imperfective

Past denotes a continuous or repeated action in the past, as in other Slavonic languages. Verbs whose root ends in с, з, к, г, б and p have no termination in the masc. sing., e.g.:—

рості́	= to grow:	ріс	masc.,	посла́	fem.
несі́ти	= to carry:	ніс	"	несла́	"
грізти́	= to gnaw:	гріз	"	грізла́	"
пекти́	= to bake:	пек	"	пекла́	"
могти́	= to be able:	міг	"	могла́	"
гребти́	= to dig, row:	гріб	"	гребла́	"
мерти́	= to die:	мер	"	мерла́	"

(Pres. 3rd sg. мре!)

Notice the regular vowel alternations: i in closed syllables, o or e in open syllables in the examples above. ліг from лягти (= to lie down, Pfive.), запїг from запрягти (= to harness, Pfive.) are formed by analogy with these examples. Мер is an exception, being derived from мрѣ-.

Verbs whose root ends in a dental -т or -д, lose it before the terminations of the Past tense, as in other East and South Slav languages, e.g.:—

месті́ = to sweep, root мет-, Past: мів м., мелá f.
весті́ = to lead, " вед-, " вів м., велá f.

Verbs of Class II in -нути may drop the syllable -ну- in the Past tense, if their root terminates in a consonant and the syllable -ну- is not stressed and usually if the verb does not have a momentary meaning. But these rules are not consistently observed:—

тягну́ти (Impfve.) = to pull: тягну́в, тягну́ла
мину́ти (Pfive.) = to pass: мину́в, мину́ла
сла́бнути (Impfve.) = to grow weak: сла́б, сла́бла
посб́хнути or (Pfive.) = to dry up: посб́хнув, посб́х-
посб́хти нула or посб́х, посб́хла
збл́днути (Pfive.) = to grow pale: збл́д, збл́дла
крі́кнути (Pfive.) = to give a shout: крі́кнув,
крі́кнула

Note the irregular Past of іти́ or йти́ (= to go), Pres. іду́ or йду́:—

іш́в or йшов masc., ішлá/йшла fem., ішлб́/йшли
neut., ішли́/йшли plur.

(No rule can be given about the shift of stress on to the terminations.)

The Pluperfect

The Pluperfect tense is formed by adding the forms of the Past tense of *бути* in the appropriate gender and number to the ordinary Past tense, as in West and South Slav, e.g.:—

я був малюва́в = I had painted or I had been painting
вона́ ходи́ла була́ = she had (often) gone
вони́ ходи́ли були́ = they had (often) gone
ти була́ зроби́ла = you (fem.) had done

The Conditional

This merely has the form of the Past tense of either aspect with the addition of the auxiliary *би* or *б* for all persons. *би* is written after words ending in a consonant, *б* after words ending in a vowel. E.g.:

Я мав би or Я б мав = I would have
вона́ б ма́ла = she would have
він би сказа́в = he would say
вона́ хоті́ла б = she would like to

The *Past Conditional* is formed by adding the (variable) Past tense of *бути* (= to be) to the ordinary Conditional, e.g.:—

Я був би мав = I would have had
вона́ була́ б ма́ла = she would have had
він би це давнó був зроби́в = he would have done this long ago

The Imperative

Besides forms for the 2nd pers. sing. and plur., the Imperative in Ukrainian has forms for the 1st pers. plural, as in South and West Slav (= let us...). The 3rd pers. sing. and plur. of the Imperative is expressed by—

(не)хай́ + 3rd pers. sing. or plur. Pres. Impfve. or Pres./Fut. Pfive., e.g.:—

нехай́ or хай́ гра́є = let him play!—Impfve.
нехай́ or хай́ візьму́ть = let them take—Pfive.

Let us... can also be expressed by дава́йте, as in Russian, e.g.:—

дава́йте малюва́ти = let us paint!

The endings for both aspects, always added to the Present stem, are:—

(a) Stressed or unstressed (b) after vowels (c) after the labials б, п, в, м, ф, the *chuintantes* ж, ш, ч, щ, and after р

2nd pers. sing.	-и	-й	-ь
1st pers. pl.	-ім(о)	-ймо	-ьмо
2nd pers. pl.	-ить	-йте	-ьте

The endings (a) are used stressed for verbs which have final stress in 1st pers. sing. Pres., but are added to the stem as it appears in the 2nd pers. sing. Pres. or Pres./Future, e.g.:—

іді, ідеш = I go: Imper. іді, ідім(о), ідіть
 пущу, пущиш = I shall allow: Imper. пущі, пущіть
 пустім(о), пущіть

The endings (a) are unstressed with verbs with a stressed prefix, e.g.:—

вібери = I shall choose: Imper. вибери,
 виберім(о), виберіть

and also with verbs with the syllable -ну- after a consonant in the root (Class II), e.g.:—

крікну = I shall give a shout: Imper. крїкни,
 крїкнім(о), крїкніть

as well as with verbs with stems in a consonant + р or л, e.g.:—

підкреслю = I shall underline: Imper. підкресли
 провітря = I shall air: Imper. провітри

The endings (b) are used for verbs with vowel stems:—

грати = to play, Pres. граю, Imper. грай, граймо,
 грайте
 купувати = to buy, Pres. купую, Imper. купуй,
 купуймо, купуйте
 дякувати = to thank, Pres. дякую, Imper. дякуй,
 дякуймо, дякуйте
 вимірювати = to measure out, Pres. вимірюю,
 Imper. вимірюй, вимірюймо, вимірюйте

The endings (c) are used only after the labials, *chuintantes* and р, e.g.:—

ставити = to put, Pres. ставлю, Imper. став,
 ставмо, ставте
 ршити (Pfive.) = to move, touch, Fut. ршуду,
 Imper. руш, ршимо, ршуде
 повірити (Pfive.) = to believe, Fut. повірю,
 Imper. повір, повірмо, повірте

The endings (d) occur only after the plosive (д, т), sibilant (с, з), liquid (л) and nasal (н) dentals, e.g.:—

сісти (Pfive.) = to sit down, Fut. сяду, Imper. сядь, сядьмо, сядьте
 чїстити = to clean, Pres. чїду, чїстиш, Imper. чїсть, чїстьмо, чїстьте
 повісити (Pfive.) = to hang, Fut. повішу, повісиш, Imper. повісь, повісьмо, повісьте
 візволити (Pfive.) = to liberate, Fut. візволю, Imper. візволь, візвольмо, візвольте
 стати (Pfive.) = to become, begin, Fut. стану, Imper. стань, станьмо, станьте

Roots in -г and -к, by analogy with the Present, undergo the 1st Palatalization (not the 2nd, as in Old Slavonic, Serbo-cr., Sln., Czech) in all persons of the Imperative, e.g.:—

лягті (Pfive.) = to lie down, Fut. ляжу, ляжеш,
 Imper. ляж, ляжмо, ляжте
 бігти = to run, Pres. біжу, біжиш, Imper. біжй,
 біжім(о), біжіть
 пекті = to bake, Pres. печу, печеш, Imper. пецй,
 пецім(о), пеціть

Verbs of Class III with stems in с, з and х, follow in their Imperative the consonantal changes caused by yotation in their Present, changing с, з, х to ш, ж, and ш respectively, e.g.:—

писати = to write, Pres. пишу, пишеш, Imper. пиші, пишім(о), пишіть
 казати = to say, Pres. кажу, кажеш, Imper. кажй,
 кажім(о), кажіть
 брехати = to tell lies, Pres. брешу, брешеш,
 Imper. брешй, брешім(о), брешіть

The *Gerunds* (Active)

These, as in Russian, can only refer to the subject of the sentence and qualify the main verb. The Present *Gerund* is obtained from the 3rd pers. plur. Pres. (Impfve.) by substituting -чи for the final -ть. The position of the stress is uncertain, e.g.:—

беру́ть	= they take	беру́чи	= taking
кажу́ть	= they say	кажу́чи	etc.
виробля́ють	= they manufacture	виробля́ючи	
ба́чають	= they see	ба́чаючи	
сидя́ть	= they sit	сидя́чи	
лета́ть	= they fly	лета́чи	
сплять	= they sleep	спля́чи	

The Present Gerund can qualify a verb in any tense and denotes an action or state contemporary with that of the main verb.

The *Past Gerund* is formed by adding -ши, which is never stressed, to the masc. sing. of the Past tense of either aspect, e.g.:—

ніс	= he was carrying	нісши	= having carried
купува́в	= he was buying	купува́вши	= having been buying
купи́в	= he bought	купи́вши	= having bought

It indicates an action previous to that of the main verb, which can be in any tense.

A few verbs, especially бу́ти, have their Past Gerund used in the sense of a Present Gerund, e.g.:—

бу́вши = being, is used for бу́дучи.

Reflexive verbs usually have the short form of the suffix, -сь, in both their Gerunds, e.g.:—

се́рдячись	= getting angry
схили́вшись	= having leant down

The Participles (*Verbal adjectives*)

In Ukrainian only the Past Participle Passive can be regularly formed from all (transitive) verbs.

The *Present Participle Active* is rarely used. It is formed by adding (in the case of only a few verbs) -чий, -ча, -че to the 3rd pers. plur. Pres. after removing the final -ть, e.g.:—

працю́чий	= working
зроста́ючий	= growing together

A few compound intransitive perfective verbs have *Past Participles Active* in -лий, -ла, -ле, e.g.:—

почорні́лий	= blackened
навис́лий	= hanging over

The *Past Participle Passive*, formed from the Infinitive stem of transitive verbs only, is characterized by the endings either -ний, -на, -не or -тий, -та, -те.

I. The latter endings are used only with:—

(a) monosyllabic roots containing -и-, -і-, -у-, -я-, -а- after a *chuintante*, and -ер-, e.g.:

біти	= to beat,	Past Part.	бі́тий	= beaten,
грі́ти	= to warn,	"	"	грі́тий
взу́ти	= to put on	"	"	взу́тий
	(footwear) (Pfive.),	"	"	
взя́ти	= to take (Pfive.),	"	"	взя́тий
жа́ти	= to harvest,	"	"	жа́тий
те́рти	= to rub,	"	"	те́ртий

(b) verbs with -оло- and -оро- in their Infinitive stem, which have alternative forms in -ний, e.g.:—

колоти́	= to prick,	Past Part.	ко́лотий	or	ко́лений
пороти́	= to rip,	"	"	"	по́ротий
молоти́	= to grind,	"	"	"	мо́лотий
		"	"	"	ме́лений

(c) verbs of Class II with Infinitives in -нути, which also have alternative forms in -ний, e.g.:—

ки́нути	= to throw (Pfive.),	Past Part.	ки́нутий	or	ки́нений
верну́ти	= to return (trans.),	Past Part.	Pass.		верну́тий
					or
					ве́рнений

II. All other verbs have Past Participles Passive in -ний.

Verbs with Infinitives in -ати (-яти) have Past Part. Pass. ending in -аний, -яний (*not stressed*), e.g.:—

писа́ти	= to write,	Past Part. Pass.	писа́ний
ора́ти	= to plough,	"	"
держáти	= to hold,	"	"
пита́ти	= to ask,	"	"
розрі́зня́ти	= to distinguish,	"	"
		"	"
		"	"
		"	"

Verbs with Infinitives in -увати or -ювати have Past Part. Pass. ending in -ований or -юваний (-йований after a vowel) respectively, while those in -увати, -ювати (unstressed) have -уваний, -юваний:—

дорува́ти	= to present,	Past Part. Pass.	дорува́ний
малюва́ти	= to paint,	"	"
копіюва́ти	= to copy,	"	"
пока́зувати	= to show,	"	"
вигото́влювати	= to prepare,	"	"
		"	"
		"	"
		"	"

All other types of verbs have Past Part. Pass. in -ений (-ений after vowels), e.g.:—

пáсти	= to graze,	Past Part. Pass.	пáсений
плéсти	= to weave,	"	" плéтений
крáсти	= to steal,	"	" крáдений
сiкти	= to hew,	"	" сiчений*
пéкти	= to bake,	"	" пéчений*
запрягáти	= to harness,	"	" запряжений*

Verbs of Class IV undergo the consonantal changes caused by yotation before the termination -ений, hence we have:—

лю́бити	= to love	лю́блений
ку́пiti	= to buy	ку́плений
погасiти	= to extinguish	погáшений
вразiти	= to strike, impress	врáжений
вoзiти	= to convey	вoжений
но́сiti	= to carry	но́шений
плáти	= to pay	плáчений
грома́дити	= to rake up	грома́ждений
мо́сти	= to lay, spread	мо́чений
верти́ти	= to twist	ве́рчений
ви́здити	= to ride all over	ви́жджений**
засiдiти	= to hatch	засiджений
ви́гоiti	= to heal	ви́гоений

but no change in:—

хва́лiti	= to praise	хва́лений
ва́рiti	= to cook	ва́рений
чи́нiti	= to act, do	чи́нений
бáчити	= to see	бáчений

(Students of Russian should note that these Past Part. Passive never have a double -н- in the termination and that they have no corresponding special predicative (short) forms. Adjectives in -енний or -анный (-янный) correspond to adjectives in -able in English, e.g.:—

незчислénний = uncountable, countless
несказа́нный = ineffable

or else those in -енний are augmentatives, e.g.:—

си́лénний very strong, mighty

From these Past Participles Passive are formed the *Verbal Nouns* in -ання, -ення (or in -iння when ending is stressed), e.g.:—

*with 1st Palatalization.

**also = broken in (of a horse)

жада́ння = longing
розхо́дження = divergence, discrepancy
вiдхо́бшення = relation

but—

но́сiння = carrying

Verbs in -увати, -ювати in the Infinitive have Verbal Nouns mostly in -ування, -ювання, e.g.:—

друкува́ння = printing
малюва́ння = painting

Examples of the two Conjugations of Regular Verbs

1. -e- type (Classes I, II and III).

Class I. пастí¹ = to graze Class III. питáти² = to ask

PRESENT

Sing. 1	пасу́	пита́ю
2	пасе́ш	пита́єш
3	пасе́	пита́є

Plur. 1	пасемо́	пита́ємо
2	пасете́	пита́єте
3	пасу́ть	пита́ють

IMPERATIVE

Sing. 2	пасí	пита́й
Plur. 1	пасíм	пита́ймо
2	пасíть	пита́йте

GERUNDS

Present	пасу́чи	пита́ючи
Past	пáсши	пита́вши

PARTICIPLE

Past Pass. пáсений пита́ний

PAST TENSE пас, пáсла, пита́в, пита́ла,
пáсло пита́ло

¹So also verbs of Class II.

²Consonantal stems belonging to this Class III undergo the changes due to the *j* in *all* persons of the Present and Imperative: писáти = to write, Pres. пишу́, пишеш, пи́ше, etc., 3rd plur. пишу́ть; пишí!

2. -i-type (Class IV)

PRESENT	хваліти = to praise	гоїти = to heal
Sing. 1	хвалі́	гої́
2	хвалі́ш	гої́ш
3	хвалі́ть	гої́ть
Plur. 1	хвалі́мо	гої́мо
2	хвалі́те	гої́те
3	хвалі́ть	гої́ть
IMPERATIVE		
Sing. 2	хвалі́	гої́
Plur. 1	хвалі́м	гої́мо
2	хвалі́ть	гої́те
GERUNDS		
Present	хвалі́ючи	гої́вши
Past	хвалі́вши	гої́вши
PARTICIPLE		
Past Pass.	хвалі́лений	го́снений
PAST TENSE	хвалі́в, хвалі́ла, хвалі́ло	гої́в, гої́ла, гої́ло

Roots in *chuintantes* change the endings -ю (1st sing.) and -ять (3rd plur.) into -у and -ать respectively, e.g.:—

крича́ти = to shout: кричу́, крича́ть

Before the -ю of the 1st pers. sing.* of the Present of *i*-verbs, consonantal changes caused by the -*j*- take place, as well as in the Past Participle Passive (see above): hence—

сиді́ти = to sit: сиджу́
леті́ти = to fly: летчу́

Irregular Verbs

Class V (the "athematic" verbs):—

бу́ти = to be да́ти
= to give (Pfve.)

PRESENT	
Sing. 1	є
2	є
3	є
Plur. 1	є
2	є
3	є

* See p. 149 concerning the 3rd pers. plural of *labial* stems (only) and their Present Gerund and Present Participles.

FUTURE		
Sing. 1	бу́ду	дам
2	бу́деш	дасі́
3	бу́де	дасть
Plur. 1	бу́демо	дамо́
2	бу́дете	дасте́
3	бу́дуть	даду́ть
IMPERATIVE		
Sing. 2	бу́дь	дай
Plur. 1	бу́дьмо	даймо́
2	бу́дьте	дайте́
GERUNDS		
Present	бу́вши	да́вши
Past	(за)бу́вши ¹	
PARTICIPLE		
Past Passive	(за)бу́тий ²	да́ний
PAST TENSE	був, була́, було́; бу́лі	дав, дала́

ї́сти = to eat опові́м
з'ї́сти (Pfve.)³ relate (Pfve.)³

PRESENT		
Sing. 1	ї́м	опові́м
2	ї́си́	опові́си́
3	ї́сть	опові́сть
Plur. 1	ї́мо́	опові́мо́
2	ї́сте́	опові́сте́
3	ї́дять	опові́дять
FUTURE		
Sing. 1	з'ї́м	опові́м
2	з'ї́си́	опові́си́
3	з'ї́сть	опові́сть
Plur. 1	з'ї́мо́	опові́мо́
2	з'ї́сте́	опові́сте́
3	з'ї́дять	опові́дять

¹ = having forgotten.

² = forgotten

³ Similarly: Відпові́сті = to answer, розпові́сті = to tell, narrate.

Imperative	Іж	(оповіда́й) ¹
Sing. 2	Іжмо	(оповіда́ймо) ¹
Plur. 1	Іжете	(оповіда́йте) ¹
2		
GERUNDS		
Present	Ідячі	опові́вши
Past	Івши	
PARTICIPLES		
Past Passive	Іджений	опові́джений
PAST TENSE	Ів, Іла	опові́в, опові́ла

Other irregular and noteworthy verbs

хотіти (= to want) has an irregular Present of the *e*-class:—

Sing. 1	хочу	Plur. 1	хóчемо
2	хóчеш (or colloq. хоч)	2	хóчете
3	хóче	3	хóчуть

бігти (= to run, Impfve.) has a Present of the *i*-type (Class IV):—

Sing. 1	біж́у	Plur. 1	біж́имо
2	біж́иш	2	біж́ите
3	біж́ить	3	біж́ять

PAST біг, бігла

IMPERATIVE біжі́, біжі́мо, біжі́ть

(The Frequentative біга́ти, бігаю́ is regular.)

Notice also:—

	Present or Pfve.	Past
Class I	Future	
дути = to blow	дму́, дмеш	дув, ду́ла
їня́ти = to take (Impfve.)	їму́, їмеш	їняв, їня́ла
взя́ти = to take (Pfve.)	визьму́, визьмеш	взяв
обійня́ти = to embrace (Pfve.)	обіййму́, обійймеш	обійняв, обійня́ла
підня́ти = to lift (Pfve.)	підніму́, піднімеш	підняв
but—		
їма́ти = to take (Impfve.)	їмаю́, їма́еш (regular)	їмав, їма́ла

¹From the Imperfective оповіда́ти.

Pres. or Pfve. Fut.

Past

бра́ти = to take (Impfve.)	беру́, береш	брав, бра́ла
жа́ти = to reap	жну́, жнеш	жав
поча́ти = to begin (Pfve.)	почну́, почнеш	поча́в
жа́ти = to press	жму́, жмеш	жав
м'я́ти = to crumple	мну́, мнеш	м'яв
кля́сти = to curse	клянну́, клянеш	кляв, кля́ла
зва́ти = to call	звучу́, зовеш	звав
ссáти = to suck	ссу́, ссеш	ссав
могт́и ¹ = to be able	можу́, можеш	мог, мо́гла
лягт́и = to lie down (Pfve.)	ляжну́, ляжеш	ляг, ля́гла
волокт́и = to drag	волочу́, волочеш	воп́к, во́клá
рев́ити or ре́вти = to roar	реву́, реवेश	ревів, реві́ла or рів, реві́ла
плист́и or плив́ити = to float	пливу́, пливеш	плив, плив́а
сі́сти = to sit down (Pfve.)	сяду́, сядеш	сів, сі́ла
гнáти = to drive	жену́, женеш	гнав
ткáти = to weave	тчу́, тчеш	ткав
умёрти = to die (Pfve.)	умру́, умреш	умёр, -ла
гребе́ти = to row	гребу́, гребеш	гріб, греб́ла
забу́ти = to forget (Pfve.)	забуду́, забудеш	забу́в, забу́ла
кля́сти = to put	кладу́, кладеш	клав
густ́и or гуд́ити = to buzz, hoot	гуду́, гудеш	гув, гу́ла or гудів, гуд́ла
ж́ити = to live	живу́, живеш	жив, жил́а
Class II		
досягт́и = to reach (Pfve.)	досягну́, досягнеш	досяг
(по)ді́ти = to put (carelessly) (Pfve.)	(по)ді́ну, (по)ді́неш	(по)ді́в
ста́ти = to become (Pfve.)	ста́ну, ста́неш	став
Class III		
ма́ти = to have	маю́, ма́еш	мав, ма́ла (Regular)
лі́ти } = to pour	лю́, ллеш	лив, лил́а, Imper. лий
лля́ти }		

¹Notice the stress in (до)помо́гти = to help (Pfve.):
Future: помо́жу́, помо́жеш, Past помо́г, помо́гла, Imperative помо́ж!

	<i>Pres. or Pfv. Fut.</i>	<i>Past</i>
кувати = to forge	кую, куєш	кував
давати = to give	даю, даєш	давав
пити* = to drink	п'ю, п'єш	пив, пив, п'єш Imper. пий
політи = to weed	полю, полієш	полів
колоти = to prick	колю, колезь	колов
слати = to send	шлю, шлеш	слав
свати or сяяти	сваю, сяєш	свав or сяв
= to shine		

*So also віти = to wind, twist, Pres. в'ю, в'єш, Imper. вий; біти = to strike, Pres. б'ю, б'єш, Imper. бий.

The labials before the ' are pronounced *hard*: pju, vju, bju, etc. Notice the alternative stress in the 2nd pers. sing. of the Future of the compound розбити = to smash (Pfv.), Fut. розіб'єш, розіб'єш, etc. Note that віти = to howl, мити = to wash, рйти = to dig, and also шити = to sew, are all regular (Class III 1.A.2) in Ukrainian:

Pres. в'ю, в'єш, etc., м'ю, м'єш, etc.

р'ю, р'єш, etc., ш'ю, ш'єш, etc.

Past: вил, вів, etc.; Imper. вий! etc.

Class IV.

спати = to sleep сплю, спиш спав

(сплять)

стояти = to stand has—Imperative: стій, стіймо (otherwise regular). Pres.: стою, стоїш.

Verbs of Going and Conveying

To go (on foot):

Impfve.: іти

Pres.: іду, ідеш

Past: йшов, йшла

(ішов, ішла after

a consonant, etc.)

Imper.: іди

Pfve.: піти

Fut.: піду, підеш

пішов, пішла,

пішло

пиді

Frequentative: ходити

Pres.: ходжу, ходиш

Past: ходив, ходила

Imper.: ходи, ходім, ходіть

To go (be conveyed):

Impfve.: іхати

Pres.: іду, ідеш

Past: іхав

Imper.: іди

Pfve.: поїхати

Fut.: поїду, поїдеш

поїхав

поїдь

Frequentative: їздити

Pres.: їжджу, їдиш

Past: їздив

Imper.: їдь

To come (on foot):

Impfve. and Freq.: приходити

Pres.: приходжу, приходиш

Past: приходив

Imper.: приходь

Pfve.: прийти

Fut.: прийду, прийдеш

пришов, прийшла,

пришло

прийди

To come (be conveyed):

Impfve. and Freq.: приїздити

Pres.: приїжджу, приїздиш

Past: приїжджав

Imper.: приїзди, приїжджай

Pfve.: приїхати

Fut.: приїду, приїдеш

приїхав

приїдь

Similarly: to go away (on foot): = відходити, відійти, Fut. відійду, відійдеш

to go away (conveyed):

= { від'їздити, Pfve.: від'їхати

від'їжджати

to go out (on foot) = виходити, вийти

Past: вийшов

to go out (conveyed) =

{ виїздити,

виїжджати

Pfve. виїхати

On the same scheme:

To carry:

Impfve.: нести

Pres.: несучу, несеш

Past: неси, несли

Imper.: неси

Pfve.: понести

Fut.: понесу, понесеш

поніс, понесли

понеси

Freq.: носити

Pres. носу, носиш

Past: носив

Imper.: носи

To bring:

Impfve. and Freq.:
принісати Pfvе.: принести
Pres.: принісш, принісиш Fut.: принесу, принесеш
Imper.: принісь

To lead:

Impfve.: вести Pfvе.: поведіти
Pres. веду, ведеш Fut.: поведу, поведеш
Past: вів, велі повів, повелі
Imper.: веді поведі

Freq.: водіти
Pres. воджу, водиш
Past: водів
Imper.: воді

To bring (a person):

Impfve. and Freq.:
привідити Pfvе.: привести
Pres. привіджу, привідиш Fut. приведу, приведеш
Imper. привідь

To convey:

Impfve.: везті Pfvе.: повезті
Pres.: везу, везеш Fut. повезу, повезеш
Past: віз, везлі повіз, повезлі
Imper.: везі повезі

Freq.: возіти
Pres. возжу, возиш
Past: возів
Imper.: возі

To bring (in a vehicle):

Impfve. and Freq.:
привізити Pfvе. привезіти
Pres.: привізжу, привізиш Fut.: привезу, привезеш
Imper.: привізь

TEXTS

I. Євангелія від св. Луки, VIII.

5. Ось вийшов сіяч, щоб посіяти зерно своє. І як сіяв, упало одне край дороги, — і було повітоптуване, а птахи небесні його повідзьобували.

6. Друге ж упало на ґрунт кам'янистий, — і зійшовши, усохло, не мало бо вогкості.

7. А інше упало між терен, — і вигнався терен, і його поглушив.

8. Інше ж упало на добру землю, — і, зійшовши, уродило стократно. Це сказавши, закликав: "Хто має вуха, щоб слухати, — нехай слухає!"

II.

Т. Шевченко.

І небо невміте, і заспані хвилі,
І понад берегом геть-геть,
Неначе п'яний, очерет

Без вітру гнеться. Боже милий!
Чи довго буде ще мені

В оцій незамкнутій тюрмі,
Понад оцим нікчемним морем
Нудити світлом? Не говориць,
Мовчить і гнеться, мов жива,

В степу пожовклая трава;
Не хоче правдоньки сказать,
А більше ні в кого спитать.

III.

Т. Шевченко.

Пророк

Неначе праведних дітей,
Господь, любя отих людей,
Послав на землю їм пророка, —
Свою любов благовістить!
Святу правду возвістить!
Неначе наш Дніпро широкий,
Слова його лились, текли
І в серце падали глибоко!
Огнем невидимим пекли
Замерзлі душі. Полубили
Того пророка, скрізь ходили
За ним і слъози, знай, лили
Навчені люди. І лукаві!
Господню святу славу

Розтлили... І чужим богам
 Пожерли жертву! Омерзались!
 І мужа свята.. Горе вам!
 На стогнах каменем побили.
 І праведно господь великий,
 Мов на звірей тих лютих, диких,
 Кайдани повелів кувать,
 Глибокі тюрми покопавъ.
 І, роде лютий і жестокий!
 Вомісто кроткого пророка...
 Царя вам повелів надать!

IV.

Т. Шевченко.

Утоптала стежечку
 Через яр, серденько,
 На базар.
 Продавала бублики
 Козакам, серденько,
 Вторгувала, серденько,
 П'ятака.
 Я два шаги, два шаги
 Пропила,
 За копітку дудника
 Найняла.
 Заграй мені, дуднику,
 На дуду,
 Нехай своє лишенько
 Забуду.
 Отака я дівчина,
 Така я!
 Сватай мене, серденько,
 Виду я.

V.
Л. Глібов.

Орачі й муха.

У полі орачі на ярині орали,
 І муха там була.
 І хоч її непрохану ганяли,
 Одначе крадькомом і їла, і пила.
 Бо звикла змалечку кохатись у чужому.
 Над вечір орачі верталися додому,
 І муха там на розі у вола.
 Зустрівсь комар на лузі край села
 Та й каже, сміючись: "Добрівечір,
 сестричко!
 А ти вже тут чого, моя перепелічко?"

Кума, чи рбдичка кому?"
 А та йому:
 "Бов, бов! Раденький, що дурненький!
 Хоч довгий ніс, та розум коротенький.
 Во комарі не сяють і не жнуть.
 Ти роздивись: у полі ми орали,
 Раненько почали, ввесь день не спочивали.
 Тепер додому час, з вечерею нас ждуть."

VI.

М. Вовчок.

Однієї весни вийшли ми рано з дому, пристали в
 Кумицях, як і звичайно, на третій день увечері.
 Тепло було і вишні цвіли рясно. Не доїхавши до тіт-
 чиної хати, Гриць сплив воли, та й каже:
 —Дивись, Івасю, не одходь братіку; я зараз
 вернусь.
 —А куди се, Грицю?
 —Да треба до знакового чоловіка забігти. Возів
 не лишай! —та й пішов; а я за ним назирком; до яких
 се знакових людей він ходить?
 Перейшли улицю, підкрались під нову хату. Гриць
 свиснув; переждав трохи, свиснув удруге... утрече...
 Все нічого не чути. А мене аж під п'яти пече, — що се
 буде? Обійшов Гриць садок. Якраз під старю вишнею,
 що, здається, найряснійше цвіла, стояла дівчина —
 хороша, як зоря ясна, руса коса нижче пояса; стояла
 вона проти місяця молодика, і, піднявши білу руку, про-
 мовляла:

"Молодик,
 Як гвоздик!
 Тобі роги красні,
 Мені очі ясні!"

Як почала приказувати так удруге, Гриць тихе-
 сенько свиснув. Дівчина стрепенулась, як сива зо-
 зулька; прислухається... Грицько ближче, — "Грицю!
 —каже, —се ти, Грицю?"
 Я собі послухати посунувсь, та, як був дурний,
 так і шурхнув у яму, —увесь вид кропивою пожалив.
 Якийсь вражий син під самісіньким тином яму виколав.
 Годі вже тоді слухати—вискочив та до возів! Мабуть
 Гриць подумав, чи не зайця сполохнув.
 Перестояли ми три дні в Кумицях. Грицько під-
 жидав знов знакових людей, —не прийшли вражі сини!
 А сам, тим часом, щовечора ходив, а світом вертав. Я,
 водившись з хлопцями, допитавсь, чия се нова хата:
 Данила Мороза. Козак був усатий, здоровий, а ще до
 того й дуже сердитий; мав дочку Марину.

VII.

М. Рильский.

Море і солов'ї.

В зеленій бухті сонце і дрімота.
Ген-ген уже димиться пароплав,
За ним замкнулись водні ворота
І ржавий ключ на дно спокійно вправ.

Округлі груди піднімає море
И опускає з віддыхом тяжким,
І світ такий прозорий і просторий,
Як для дитини материнський дім.

В димах узгір'я вирине й тоне,
І тінь од нього розпростерлась ниць,
І падають сніги рожевих птиць
На море запахує і солоне.

VIII.

П. Тичина.

В космічному оркестрі.

Благословенні:
матерія і просторінь, число і міра!
Благословенні кольори, і тембри, і огонь,
огонь, тональність всього світу,
огонь і рух, огонь і рух!

Дух, що пройняв єси все,
хто ти єсть?

Чи звать тебе спокоем? вітром?
сліпою силою машин?
Чи слухом атомів, ігрою порошин?
Ти перед всім світлом руки звів немов перед
люпітром,

тло—
пропелерами загуло,
хаос у танці завертіло
і десь тромбонами в бездонних коридорах
оддало...

Тьми-тем тіл, часток неспаяних самотно
забриніло;
скоріш, скоріш
одне з одним,
орбітно-плавко упадім,
скоріш!

Мільйони сонцевих систем
вібрують, рвуть і гототять!
Комети ржуть і баско мчатся,
і океани над океанами шумлять.
Тьми-тем тіл, часток неспаяних
спіралять вниз, убік у стелі...

Огні! огні!
І плачуть, і співають промені у далині,
немов віолончелі.

Дух, що пройняв єси все,
хто ти єсть?

SECTION 3. BYELORUSSIAN¹ (WHITE RUSSIAN)

INTRODUCTION

The Byelorussians live in the Western part of the U.S.S.R. Their country is wooded and plentifully watered, but in many places it has poor sandy soil or vast marshes. Its eastern boundary lies some 400 miles west of Moscow, and is roughly bounded by the Upper Volga in the north-east and by the rivers Desna in the south-east, Pripet in the south, Narew in the west, and stretches as far as the upper reaches of the river Velikaya in the north (beyond the Dvina). This area now approximately coincides with the boundaries of the Byelorussian S.S.R. Before 1939 the Byelorussian people had never been united in a single republic of their own. Their native land had never been rich enough economically or powerful enough politically to ensure their independence, and they became the subjects of different powerful neighbours in turn. They had few big towns, being mostly a peasant people, cultivating crops such as corn or flax, or engaged in forestry and fishing. Life was hard, and their folk-songs often reflect a melancholy and gloomy mood. In the south of their country lies the vast area of the Pripet (Prýpiat') Marshes, in which the town of Pinsk is situated. Gómel is on the north-eastern edge of this area. Minsk, the capital of the republic, is well to the north-west, somewhat west of the centre of the republic. East of Minsk are the big towns of Mohilév and Vitebsk. The whole of the republic suffered very heavily during the recent war (1939-1945).

The language of the Byelorussians is closely akin to Ukrainian and, to a slightly less extent, to Great Russian. In its vocabulary it has many borrowings also from Polish. Phonetically it is certainly closest to Ukrainian, but with the important difference that, unlike the latter, it is characterized by "akanie" (the pronunciation of all unstressed o's as a), which makes it akin to the southern Great Russian dialects. Modern literary Byelorussian is founded on the dialects of south-west Byelorussia, which are characterized by strong "akanie". This feature has caused the famous Russian scholar, Shákhatov, to surmise that the Byelorussians are the descendants of eastern Slavs who originally lived much further east in Central Russia and took refuge in the forests and

marshes of Byelorussia under the pressure of invaders from Asia. Another feature, the so-called "dzekanie", "cekanie" (the pronunciation of palatalized d and t as soft affricates—phonetic č , š) seemed to Shákhatov to indicate a certain intermingling with Lechitic (old Polish) tribes, while he considers that the many features of Byelorussian shared with Ukrainian show the close kinship of these two languages.

The Byelorussians first appear in history as partners in the Principality of Lithuania, whose prince Gedymin occupied Eastern Byelorussia in 1315. Soon after Western Byelorussia and Western Ukraine were also taken over by Lithuania, whose princes then styled themselves "Dux magnus Lithuaniae et Russiae". The Lithuanians were both less numerous and less civilized than their Slav subjects, and hence it was that they took over a form of Byelorussian mixed with Ukrainian as their own official language of administration and also of literature. This language was a fusion of the Byelorussian and Ukrainian of that period, which in its written form was dominated by the orthography and traditions of Church Slavonic. Many works of early Russian literature are claimed alike by Russians, Ukrainians, and Byelorussians as ancient examples of their languages. In truth they are the common heritage of all the three East Slav languages, which in those days had not come to be clearly differentiated.

The influence of Ukrainian was also strong later, in the seventeenth century, after the Union of Lithuania with Poland in 1569 (the Unia Lubelska), by which large areas of Byelorussia and Western Ukraine also came under Poland. This was due to the influence of the Orthodox Church which extended a common organization over Ukraine and Byelorussia, and in which a Ukrainian pronunciation of Church Slavonic predominated (in these lands) right into the twentieth century.

One of the earliest landmarks of Byelorussian literature is F. Skarýna's translation of the Bible, printed in Prague in 1517-1519. Important too are the *Lithuanian Chronicles* and the *Lithuanian Statute* and the verses of Andrew Pýmša, all dating from the sixteenth century, as well as numerous church writings. After the establishment of the Uniat (Greek Catholic) Church at the close of the sixteenth century, the Byelorussian literary language began to be strongly polonized under the influence of the Polish Jesuit writers. This can be seen in the numerous "inter-media" and "school dramas" of that period which have been preserved to this day in manuscripts written in the Latin alphabet.

¹ Pronounced: B-yellow-Russian.

Modern Byelorussian literature dates from Vikén-tij Róvinskij's travesty of the Aeneid, written at the beginning of the nineteenth century, in imitation of the Ukrainian, Kotl'arévskij's "Eneida" which had appeared in 1798. At the same time there appeared the anonymous comic epos *Taras on Parmassus*. The didactic poet, Jan Chachót, and the novelist and dramatist V. Dúnin-Martinskíévich are also important figures in the national awakening.

One of the first scholars to devote himself to a serious investigation of Byelorussian was the Czech, Josef Pervolf, whose big work on the Slavs in Russian, "Славяне, ихъ взаимныя отношенія и связи" appeared in Warsaw in 1886-1893. The most thorough study of the language and its background was made by E. F. Kárskiij in his monumental "Българусскъ" vol. i-ii (Warsaw, 1908-1911). (His first works appeared some thirty years earlier.) The first dictionary of Byelorussian by I. Nosóvich appeared as early as 1870 in St. Petersburg.

In 1891, Maciej Burachók (F. Bahushévich) published in Cracow his *Dúška bielarúskaja* (in Latin script), an important work in the nationalist spirit.

After the revolution of 1905 the nationalist movement grew apace also within the frontiers of the Russian Empire. From 1906 the periodical "Násha Níva" started appearing in Vilna with the collaboration of the best Byelorussian writers of the time. At the same time the first Byelorussian publishing house was established in St. Petersburg. Its full title was "Zahl'ánie sónce i ū násha vakónca" (= the sun will look in at our little window too). From the group round "Násha Níva" arose the greatest Byelorussian writers of our day, the poets Jáńka Kupála (Iván Lutsévich), Jáklub Kólas (K. Mitskiévich), the first Byelorussian novelist, Tsíshka Hartný (D. Žilunóvich) and the literary critic Antón Navína (A. Lutskíévich), and many others.

It is also notable that this group worked out a uniform system of spelling for Byelorussian, which was accepted by all the Byelorussian press of the time. When using the Cyrillic script they decided to drop the letters б, в, and н; for this last (phon. i) they used only і. They also decided to write their (hard) ж (m) as мч. When using the Latin alphabet they adopted ž for former ž, š for sz, and č for cz, as well as v for the old w. These reforms were followed by B. Tarashkiévich in the first reliable grammar of Byelorussian, which he first brought out in Vilna in 1918. (The fifth revised edition was published there in 1929.)

Between the two world wars there were various disputes about the orthography of Byelorussian, both within the U.S.S.R. and outside. Dr. Jan Stankíévich of Vilna (Wilno) University was the most prominent writer on Byelorussian outside the U.S.S.R. At a conference on the language in Minsk in 1926, agreement could not be achieved. It was not till the Decree of 28th August, 1933, promulgating the adoption of the proposals of the Byelorussian Academy of Sciences in Minsk, that the modern orthography was established. The following rules were made, settling debated points:—

1. я (or a) to be written for e only in the pretonic syllable.
2. не (= not), без (= without), when written as separate words, always to retain this spelling.
3. In groups of consonants before palatalized vowels, no в is necessary (to indicate that the first element is soft too): hence чер (with soft c), not сънер (= snow). (This rule is not observed by some of the émigré press.)
4. в to be left out in double consonants: гавлѣ, not гавльѣ (= branches), жыцѣ, not жыцьѣ (= life).
5. Double soft дз to be written дзз (not дзздз): судзя́ (= judge).
6. Modern loan words not to be subject to "akanie": соцыяліста́чы (= socialist, adj.; now сацыяліста́чы), e except after т and н: тэ́атр, Дэлега́т (= theatre, delegate).
8. Foreign geographical names to be spelt so as to preserve their pronunciation as in their language of origin.

By these decisions the mainly "phonetic" character of the spelling of vowels was retained, while the reformed spelling of the soft consonant groups brought Byelorussian nearer to Russian, the spelling of which follows the very natural law that if the last element of a group of consonants is palatalized, the preceding ones will also, if possible, be pronounced palatalized by assimilation. This makes Byelorussian easier to read for Russians and Ukrainians, while the distinctive character of Byelorussian is still preserved.

With the founding of the Byelorussian S.S.R. after the Revolution and the establishment of the Byelorussian Academy of Sciences and the University at Minsk the Byelorussian people and their language entered upon a new phase of their existence, which offered them opportunities of development such as they had never known before; and their achievements should not be overlooked.

THE BYELORUSSIAN ALPHABETS

We give below parallel with the usual Cyrillic letters their equivalents in the Latin alphabet. This system is based mainly on Polish spelling, but now uses *č, ś, ź, v* for *cz, sz, ź, w* respectively—a reform made shortly before the first world war.

Cyrillic.	Latin script.	Approx. English equivalent.
А а	A a	(more open and forward than) <i>ah</i>
Б б	B b	<i>b</i>
В в	V v	<i>v</i>
Г г	H h	*phon. <i>γ</i> (voiced <i>ch</i>)
(Г' г')	G g	* <i>g</i> in "go"
Д д	D d	<i>d</i>
Е е	Je ie	<i>tye</i> in "yet"
Ё ё	Jo io	<i>tyo</i> in "yonder"
Ж ж	Ž ž	(hard) <i>zh, s</i> in "pleasure"
З з	Z z	<i>z</i>
И и	I i	<i>ee</i> in "meet"
Й й	j	<i>y</i> in "boy"
К к	K k	<i>k</i>
Л л	Ł ł and L l	<i>sz</i> in "table"
М м	M m	<i>l</i> in "leaf"
Н н	N n	<i>m</i>
О о	O o	<i>n</i>
		<i>o</i> in "for"

*In ordinary Byelorussian print the *Г* pronounced *g* and occurring mostly in foreign words is not distinguished from the ordinary *Г*, pronounced voiced *ch* (*γ*). *Г'* is used in some grammars.

†The "jotated" vowels *e, ё, ю, я* are transcribed in the Latin script respectively: *ie, io, iu, ia* after consonants and *je, jo, ju, ja* initially and after vowels.

After the soft *Л, л* only *e, o, u, a* are written.

П п	P p	<i>p</i>
Р р	R r	<i>r</i> rolled
С с	S s	<i>s</i> in "see"
Т т	T t	<i>t</i>
У у	U u	<i>oo</i> in "boot"
Ў ў	Ŭ ŭ	<i>w</i>
Ф ф	F f	<i>f</i>
Х х	Ch ch	<i>ch</i> in "loch"
Ц ц	C c	<i>ts</i> pronounced together as in "bits"
Ч ч	Č č	<i>ch</i> in "church" (hard)
Ш ш	Š š	<i>sh</i> (hard)
Ы ы	Y y	<i>i</i> in "bit" with the tip of the tongue further back
Ь ь	'	sign of palatalization or softness
Э э	E e	<i>e</i> in "bet"
Ю ю	Ju ju	<i>tu</i> in "tune", "you"
Я я	Ja ia	+ "yah"
’	j	<i>vy</i> in "yet"
	(apostrophe)	

The digraphs *дз* and *дж* are used to indicate the single sounds *dz* and *dj* (English *dz* in "adze" and *j* in "jet"), as in *дзых* (= ting!—imitation of a bell) and *дзень* (= day—with *soft dz*), and *гляджу́* (= I look), *саджу́* (= I set). (These digraphs are not treated as separate letters, distinct from *Д, д*, in dictionaries, but they cannot be separated in carrying over a word on to the next line.)

†See footnote † on previous page.

‡In the Latin script *Ł, ł* indicates a "hard" or "dark" *ł*, such as occurs in English "table", while *L, l* indicates a "soft" *ł*, such as in "leaf" or "million".

†The apostrophe is used in the Cyrillic spelling for the "yot" or "y" sound (like *y* in "yet") to separate a hard consonant from the following (soft) vowel, e.g.:—

з'езд, in Latin script *zjezd*, pron. *zjest*, = congress;
 надвор'е = yard; куп'е́ = hillocks; бярэ́б'е = lack of fish;
 Хаці́м'я girl's name.

н is hard in на = on; take it! but soft in няня = nurse
 с is hard in судá = pair of buckets, but soft in судя́ = hither, here
 х is hard in хáра = house, cottage, but soft in хiтры = cunning, etc.

It should also be noted that the soft versions of т and д in Byelorussian are the *soft* (sibilant) *affricates* ц and дз (phon. ʧ, ʤ), typical of the language, which regularly occur before yotated vowels, e.g.:—

цiха (= quiet!). cf. Russ. тихо
 дзень (= day), cf. Russ. день

This is called "cekanie-dzekanie" and does *not* apply to foreign words, hence the spellings:—

дыпламáт = diplomat
 тэáтр = theatre

ц and дз can also be hard, as in—

цэп = flail (pron. бэп)
 дзын = ting!

Г, г is pronounced in nearly all native Byelorussian words as a voiced velar fricative ɣ (the voiced counterpart of Cyrillic х), e.g.:—

гара́ = hill, pron. ɣa'ra

It is only pronounced as ɡ (as in English "go") in recent foreign loan-words and in native words after э, e.g.:—

гáнак = porch (Polish ganek)
 маэ́гі = brains

Л, л is pronounced hard (as in Russian, Ukrainian, Macedonian, and Bulgarian), phon. ɫ, before а, (э), ы, о, у (in Latin script written ła, łe, ɫy, ɫo, ɫu) and is pronounced soft (as in Russian and Ukrainian), phon. ɭ, before я, е, і, ё, ю (in Latin script written la, le, li, lo, lu), e.g.:—

ла́па = ɫapa (= paw)
 лу́г = ɫug (= meadow)
 ла́мпа = ɫampa (= lamp)
 ле́д = ɫod (= ice)

Only foreign words long accepted in the language are spelt with soft л, e.g.:—

пла́ц = area, place
 ла́мпа = lamp

But: Лóндан = London фiласóфiя = philosophy
 ла́льны = loyal лабiрiнт = labyrinth

Ф, ф occurs in foreign words. In the dialects it is replaced by хв, х and п, e.g.:—

фа́рба = paint, dial. хва́рба
 фу́нт = pound, dial. ху́нт
 фо́рма = form
 афице́р = officer

but—

Пiлiн = Philip

In groups of consonants if з, с, ц or дз precede a soft consonant except г, к or х, they also become soft in pronunciation by assimilation, as in Russian, e.g.: in чэсьць (= honour) с is soft as well as ц. (Until 1933 this used to be indicated in the spelling: чэсьць.) But in згiнуць (= to perish), скiнуць (= to throw off) з and с remain hard.

Voiced consonants become unvoiced finally and in consonantal groups before other unvoiced consonants, e.g.:—

ле́д = ice, pron. лёт
 бо́б = bean, " боп
 дождж = rain, " дошч
 нóжка = little foot, " нóшка
 рэ́дка = rarely, " рэ́тка

This also applies to the pronunciation of the prepositions and prefixes ending in д and the prepositions (only) ending in э, e.g.:—

ад хáты = from the house, pron. ат хáты
 працстаўнiк = representative, " працстаўнiк
 без хлэ́ба = without bread, " бес хлэ́ба

But *prefixes* ending in з (з-, без-, цераз-, уз-, раз-) are actually written (and pronounced) with с before unvoiced consonants, e.g.:—

згiнуць = to perish, but скiнуць = to throw off
 разбiць = to smash, but расшвiць = to widen

Unvoiced consonants become voiced in consonantal groups before other voiced consonants, e.g.:—

касьба́ = scything, pron. казьба́
 малацьба́ = threshing, " маладэзьба́
 пяцьдзэ́сят = fifty, " пяд(зь)дэ́сят

Certain groups of consonants undergo assimilation, though the spelling does not show this. Thus:—

тц, чц both sound like щ, e.g.:—

Мату́цы = to the mother

даццэ́ = to the daughter

and тч, дч both sound like чч, e.g.:—

старасвѣтчына = the old world, olden things

зага́дчык = manager

Further:—

ц is written but sounds like щ, e.g.:—

людскі́ = human

but ц is written for т+с, e.g.:—

бра́цкі = fraternal

с is written for ж+с, but ж+с remains, e.g.:—

бо́скі = divine

фра́нцускі = French

т disappears in the spelling as well as in the pronunciation of original -стн-, -стл-, e.g.:—

шча́сны, шчаслі́вы = happy

д disappears in the spelling as well as in the pronunciation of original -здн-, e.g.:—

па́зні = late

ц and цьс(я) give цц (in spelling as well as in pronunciation), e.g.:—

два́ццаць = twenty

мы́цца = to wash

мы́цца = he is washing (intrans.)

Other double consonants (except labials and р) can also occur in Byelorussian, e.g.:—

ра́лля = ploughed field

пыта́нне = question

ва́лбесе = hair (collective)

рыза́е = rags

суджа́ = judge

жыццэ́ = life

эбжа́ = corn

суча́ = branches

заці́шпа = quiet spot, lull

адда́ць = to give away

ссы́паць = to pour off

бязза́бы = toothless

ва́нны = military, martial

The Vowels. It will already have been observed from the above ("The Alphabet", the explanation of the pronunciation of л, etc.) that the pronunciation of vowels and consonants in Byelorussian is interdependent, as in Russian and Ukrainian.

The "ordinary" unyotated vowels in Byelorussian are:—

а, э, ы, о, у

to which correspond the yotated vowels:—

я, е, і, ё, ю

which are pronounced with a full "yot" or *y*-sound initially in words and syllables. Medially they have no "yot" and the preceding consonants are palatalized or pronounced soft before them. (See the examples given under "The Consonants"—second paragraph.)

In native Byelorussian words ё, ё occurs only under stress, as in Russian.

Diphthongs. Besides the above full vowels, Byelorussian, like Ukrainian, Polish, Slovak, Lusatian, and Slovenian, has two short or glide vowels which occur after any of the other vowels:—

й (phon. i)

ў (phon. u or w)

e.g.:—

да́й! = give!

нагрэ́й! = warm!

вы́ймаць = to take out

(Imperfective)

сба́ка = jay

ду́й! = blow!

даў = he gave

нагрэ́ў = he warmed

крыў = he covered

кроў = blood

дуў = he blew

да́ляй = with (his) fate
(Instr. sing.)

жа́ле́йка = pipe, whistle

кі́й = stick

зя́млэй = with earth

ма́люй! = paint!

звѣ́чаю́ = of customs

леў = lion

будзі́ў = he wakened

вера́б'ёў = of sparrows

Notice also the spellings like: здра́ўе (= health), where a further vowel follows the glide vowel ў. sonant y by itself or initially in a word before a consonant becomes shortened to (and is spelt) ў only after a preceding word ending in a full vowel, cf. Ukrainian, e.g.:—

нясе = he carries
 нясем = we carry
 but—
 несяце = you (plur.) carry
 вераб'ёў (Gen. plur.) = of sparrows
 but—
 звячаю (Gen. plur.) = of customs

But where a and я are the original vowels of a root they are, of course, retained in all unstressed positions, e.g.:—

святкаваць = to celebrate
 страхаванне = insurance

The only other vowels which suffer any noticeable *modification* when not stressed are э and е, which tend to approach ы and і respectively, so that—
 тэлерпама sounds like тылірпама in the pronunciation of some people, and—

а́рышт (= arrest) is actually so spelt.

But such spellings are exceptional in the literary language.

The vowel ы never occurs initially (this agrees with Russian and Ukrainian).

The vowels э, о, у never occur initially under stress in native Byelorussian words.

о and у have the prothetic consonant в prefixed. Hence:—

во́ка = eye ву́лица = street
 востры́ = sharp вуга́л = angle
 ву́ха = ear

and even medially—

наву́ка = learning

э has the breathing consonant г, e.g.:—

гэ́ты = this
 гэту́лькі - so much, so many

в can also be used to separate an initial unstressed а after the preposition у preceded by a word ending in a consonant, e.g.:—

аго́нь = fire
 but

дом у вагні́ = the house is on fire

The vowel і initially sounds like ы when preceded by a word ending in a hard consonant, but this is not shown in spelling (as in Russian), e.g.:—

ён ішбў (= he was going) sounds like
 ён ышбў.

When, however, a root beginning with і has a prefix ending in a hard consonant, then ы is also *written* instead of і, e.g.:—

адшыбў = he went away
 зысу́і = to go down
 пады́ў = I shall go up to
 (cf. Russian сыска́ть = to discover)

THE BYELORUSSIAN DIALECTS

The Byelorussian dialects are divided into two groups, the North-Eastern which form a transition to Great Russian, and the South-Western which are nearer to Ukrainian in its Northern dialects.

The South-Western dialects are characterized by a "non-dissimilative *akanie*", in which an а or о in the pretonic syllable is pronounced nearly like the neutral vowel е (or nearly ы in eastern districts) *only* before a stressed syllable containing а; but before stressed syllables containing any other vowel an а or о is pronounced а. Hence:—

вада́ = water
 but
 вада́ (Gen. sing.)
 ваде́ (Dat. sing.)

On the other hand the *jakanie*, i.e. pronouncing of pretonic е and я as a distinct я, is general and clearly audible in these dialects. They are also characterized by:—

- (a) The appearance of certain diphthongs only in stressed syllables.
 (b) Nom. plurals in -е (э) or -іэ (-ё), e.g.:—
 рублё́ = roubles, or рублі́
 сталы́ = tables, or сталы́
 (c) Survival of the old Dual in feminine and neuter nouns after дзве (= two), e.e.:—
 дзве руцэ́ = two hands
 дзве сядле́ = two villages
 (d) 1st pers. plural of the Present and Imperative of verbs, in -мо as well as in -м, e.g.:—
 ідемó = we are going
 даймо́ = let us give

(e) 1st and 2nd pers, plural Imperative in -ем, -еця or -іэм, -іэця, e.g.:—
 нясэм, нясеця or нясіэм, нясіэця.

(f) Imperfective Future in -му, -меш, etc., side by side with that formed with буду + Infinitive, e.g.:—
 рабіцьму = I shall work

These features appear in Ukrainian dialects, but not in the North-Eastern Byelorussian dialects.

Furthermore, in South-Western dialects no final -ць appears in the 3rd pers. sing. Present of verbs of the e-class or of non-finally stressed verbs of the i-class (in contrast to the North-Eastern dialects). Also the final -це of the 2nd pers. plural Present is pronounced -це when stressed and not -чэ, as in the North-Eastern dialects. Likewise ецць (= is) is pronounced with an e and not with a ё, as in the North-Eastern dialects. Also in some areas the 1st pers. plural Present ends in -ом preceded by the same hard consonant with which the original root ends, e.g.:—

ідом = we go
 пяком = we bake
 нясом = we carry

while in the North-Eastern dialects we have—

ідзём
 пячом
 нясём

Lastly, double consonants are reduced to single ones in some South-Western dialects.

The North-Eastern dialects really form a transition to the southern Great Russian dialects and are characterized by:—

1. The absence of "dzekanie".
2. The pronunciation of г as ɣ and not as h.
3. The use of soft р (ɣ), confused in some dialects, e.g.:—
 гразь = dirt
 гряніца = frontier
4. A soft pronunciation of ч.
5. Long ж and ш where literary Byelorussian has ждж and шч, e.g.:—

ёжжу = I go (in a vehicle)
 пушшў = I shall allow

6. л instead of ʎ, e.g.:—

волк = wolf
 займол = he dropped in

7. Soft dentals can be followed by ʎ, written ь, e.g.:—

свіньѧ = pig
 плацьѧ = dress

8. Loss of 2nd Palatalization in the declension of feminine nouns, e.g.:—

нагѧ = to the foot
 рукѧ = to the hand
 сахѧ = to the plough

9. Nom. sing. masc. of adjectives in -ой, e.g.:—

злой = evil
 худой = poor

10. Gen. sing. masc. and neut. of adjectives pronounced with в, e.g.:—

злѧва

11. Nom. plur. of masculine nouns may end in -а, e.g.:—

городѧ = towns

All these features are shared by literary Great Russian except point No. 2.

VOWEL GRADATION AND VOWEL LENGTHENING

These features are well preserved in Byelorussian, and the phonetic spelling of the vowels presents to the eye an even more varied picture than in Russian and Ukrainian.

Examples of vowel gradation:

нясцѧ = to carry (Impfve.) насцѧ = to carry (Freq.)
 нѧс = was carrying (masc.) нѧмань = carried (Past Part. Pass.)
 несяцѧ = you are carrying Pass.)
 дух = spirit дѧхнуць = to die (of animals)
 сабрѧць = to collect (Pfv.) збрѧры = preparations (for a journey)
 збрѧўца = they will collect (intrans.)
 цяцѧ = to flow цѧча = a leak ток = current

Examples of vowel lengthening:

дóхнуць = to die (of animals) дб́хаць = to breathe

сабрáць = to collect (Pfve.) сабiрáць and збiрáць
= to collect (Impfve.)

In some cases the spelling disguises examples of lengthening, as in—

прывалакцi = to drag to (Pfve.) (<-волокцi)
прывалáкцаць = to drag to (Impfve.) (<-волак-)

SLAVONIC CHARACTERISTICS

1. In common with Russian and Ukrainian, Byelorussian has "polnoglasié" for the original Common Slav syllables with vowel + liquid, which suffered metathesis in Old Slavonic and modern South and West Slav. Byelorussian changes unstressed o to a and unstressed pretonic e to я (a after p), hence the "unusual" spelling for those knowing Russian and Ukrainian. Thus:—

From original

Common Slav:—

*tołt

валакцi = to drag
мóладзъ = youth
гóлас = voice
балóта = a bog

*tořt

баранá = harrow
варóты = gates
гóрад = town

*tełt

малакó = milk
малóць = to grind (<*meliti)
жóлаб = trough

*teřt

чарадá = row, file, crowd, flock
бéраг = beach
бярбóза = birch
бярбóма
(-мя) = armful

Initially we have metathesis only, as in other Slavonic languages, e.g.:—

рабóта = work

2. The 1st Palatalization: к, г, х changing to ч, ж, ш respectively, e.g.:—

root pek-: печ = stove

root tek-: цячó = flows (Infinitive, цячбá)

бог = a god: бóжаствó = deity, divinity

страх = terror: стрáшны = terrible

2a. ц also changes to ч, e.g.:—

cf. Russian овцá (= sheep) and Byelorussian авéчка (= sheep).

3. The 2nd Palatalization is alive in literary Byelorussian and in the South-Western dialects: к, г, х change here to ц, з, с, e.g.:—

рукá = hand Dat., Loc. Sing.: руцá

пáрóg = threshold Loc.: на пáрбзе = on the threshold

вўха = ear Loc.: у вўсе = in the ear

Occasionally it is avoided, a Locative singular in -у being preferred, e.g.:—

пясóк = sand, Loc. sing.: пяскў

It never occurs in Nominatives plural in Byelorussian, e.g.:—

пяскi = sands

ваўкi = wolves

4. The influence of the j element on preceding consonants can be seen in:—

к, г, х changing to ч, ж, ш, e.g.:—

плáкаць = to weep, плáчу (1st pers. sing. Pres.)

стругáць = to plane, стругў (1st pers. sing. Pres.)

душá = soul, cf. дух = spirit

т, д (or their soft variants—ц, дэ) changing to ч, ж (or дж in verbs mostly, as in Ukrainian), e.g.:—

свéцiць = to shine, свéчу (1st pers. sing. Pres.)

мяжá = boundary (<C.S. medжа)

but also:—

пасадзiць = to plant пасаджў (1st pers. sing. Future (Pfve.))

с, з, changing to ш, ж, e.g.:—

пiсáць = to write, пiшў (1st pers. sing. Pres.)

мáзаць = to smear, мáжу (1st pers. sing. Pres.)

н and л become palatalized (but р remains hard), e.g.:—

ра́на = wound, ра́нiць = to wound (Pfve.), ра́ню (1st pers. sing. Fut.)

калóць = to prick, калю́ (1st pers. sing. Pres.)

but—

(г)ра́ць = to plough, ару́ (1st pers. sing. Pres.), аруш (2nd pers. sing. Pres.)

п, б, в, м add a palatalized л, e.g.:—

цярпéць = to suffer, цярпéб (1st pers. sg. Pres.)
любéць = to love, любéб (" ")
лавéць = to catch, лавéб (" ")

сч, здз (soft variants of ст, зд) change to шч, ждз (as in Ukrainian), e.g.:—

пусчéць = to allow (Pfve.), пущу́ (1st pers. sg. Fut.)
бздзéць = to ride, travel, бжджу́ (1st pers. sg. Pres.)
ск also changes to шч, e.g.:—

плéскаць = to splash, пляшчу́ (1st p. sg. Pres.),
плéшча (3rd p. sg. Pr.)

5. Dropping of consonants, when they occur in groups, for greater ease of pronunciation, e.g.:—

сон = dream (Indo-European root: *sup-*)
імбу́ = went (masc.) (C.S. шьдль)

т and д are dropped in the groups стн, здн, e.g.:—

пачéсны = honourable, of honour
пбэні = late
шасна́ццаць = sixteen, cf. шэсць = six

к is dropped in the group скн, e.g.:—

ці́скаць = to press (Impfve.), but
ці́снуць = to press (Pfve.)

л is dropped in:—

сб́нца = sun

д is dropped in:—

сб́рца = heart

6. Epenthetic н is *not* used with the 3rd person Personal Pronoun, in contrast to other Slavonic languages, e.g.:—

да ягб = to him
з ім, phon. з jim = with him
з ёй = with her

On the other hand prothetic (initial) в, as well as г, are very common, e.g.:—

вўчань = pupil
вўліца = street
вбэра = lake
гб́та = this (neut.)

(See also the last paragraphs of "The Vowels" in "Pronunciation, pp. 188.)

FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF BYELORUSSIAN

Only the following features are exclusively Byelorussian:—

1. "dzekanie" and "cekanie", i.e. the pronunciation of the soft (sibilant) affricates дз and ц instead of palatalized д and т respectively before soft vowels, finally (for ц only) and also before в (v) followed by a soft vowel (see also "The Consonants", p. 182), e.g.:—

дзень = day
радзéць = to bear
мб́ладзé = youth (unvoiced дз = ць!)
дзэ = two (fem.)
ціха = quiet
ляцéць = to fly
сэць = net
цвярдзéць = to assert

2. The pronunciation of original pretonic е as я (*jakanie*) (see also "The Vowels", p. 187), e.g.:—

ясу́ = I am carrying
вялікі = big
бярэза = birch

This я becomes а after р and the *chuintantes*, e.g.:—

рака́ = river
чалб́ = forehead, brow

3. The development of C.S. -въј into -ў + ј (-ў- followed by a yotated vowel), e.g.:—

здарбу́е = health
крбу́ю = with blood (Instr. sing.)

4. Assimilative changes in the pronunciation of the groups дн, бм, тц and чц (see also "The Consonants", p. 184):—

дн pronounced as нн, e.g.:—

бянн́яжка for бядн́яжка = poor wretch
сягб́ння, сэ́ння = today, cf. Russian
сегб́дня

бм pronounced as мм, e.g.:—

абм́ен = exchange, cf. Russian обм́ен

тц and чц pronounced as щц, e.g.:—

ма́тчы (Dat. sing.) = to the mother
дацц́ (" ") = to the daughter

FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF BYELORUSSIAN
AND GREAT RUSSIAN

5. The "akanie", i.e. the pronunciation of unstressed o as a (see also "The Vowels"), e.g.:—
 гарá = hill, cf. Russian горá
 ціха = quiet, " " тїхо
6. The fusion of C.S. e and ѣ into an e, which causes palatalization of the preceding consonant, e.g.:—
 дзед = grandfather (e < ѣ(ě))
 дзэсяць = ten (e < e)
7. C.S. и and ы distinguished (as also in West Slav), e.g.:—

сын = son
 сїні = blue

8. Pronunciation of stressed e as ě in certain cases (not always corresponding to Great Russian or Ukrainian), but never before *chuintantes* (as in Ukrainian, too), e.g.:—

нѣс = he carried cf. Russ. нѣс Ukr. нїс
 слѣзы = tears " слѣзы " слѣзы
 ёць = is " есть " є
 нясѣш = you (sg.) are " несѣшь " несѣш
 дзѣшава = cheap " дѣшево " дѣшево

9. Dissyllabic adjectival endings in Nom. sing. fem., neut., Nom. pl. (see p. 219-220):—

Hard stems: сляп—áя, -бе, -áя
 Soft stems: сїн—яя, -яе, -їя.

FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF BYELORUSSIAN
AND UKRAINIAN

Byelorussian has many features in common with Ukrainian.

10. The pronunciation of r as the *fricative* voiced velar ɣ, except in foreign words and in the combination ɣr when the plosive ɣ is used. (All are now written with r.) One pronounces:—

гарá = hill
 гóлы = bare, etc., with ɣ
 but—

маэгі = brains
 грунт = foundation, etc. with phon. ɣ

11. C.S. *d+j* changes to the affricate дж (phon. џ) in verbs and in some nouns, e.g.:—

сяджú = I am sitting
 саджа́ць = to plant
 раджа́ць = to bear
 ураджа́й = harvest
 паходжанне = origin

12. C.S. в and л after vowels finally in words and syllables become ѱ(у), e.g.:—

From в:—

кроў = blood
 даўно́ = long ago

From л:—

даў = gave (masc.)

From C.S. љ, љ' (vocalic љ) we have оў:—

воўк = wolf доўг = debt, loan
 лѡуны = full

13. C.S. unstressed рь, гь, ль, лѣ develop into ры, лы (occasionally ли); when stressed they develop into ро, ло as in other East Slav languages, e.g.:—

кравáвы = bloodstained
 дрыжа́ць = to tremble
 глыта́ць = to swallow
 яблык = apple (Nom. sing.)
 блишча́ць = to shine

but—

дрож = shivering
 глѡтка = gullet

14. Double consonants develop before vowels from C.S. combination of consonant + ѱj + vowel. In Byelorussian this applies to the dentals and the *chuintantes*, e.g.:—

умѣнне = learning, science
 вясѣлле = wedding
 суджа́ = judge
 жыццѣ = living, life
 рызэ (Instr. sing.) = with a thing
 збѡжжа = (harvested) corn } see p. 187 for
 зацішка = lull, quiet spot } the final -а.

15. Initial i and y are reduced to non-syllabic i and y before consonants, especially after a preceding word ending in a vowel. (This is not shown in the spelling of words with i.) E.g.:—

яна́ ідзэ́ (pron. яна́ ідзэ́) = she is going
(пoльмя) шалéна ўзвiвaецца ўвэрх = the flame
rises madly upwards

Initial i is sometimes lost altogether, e.g.:—

гoлка for ігoлка = needle

This rule also applies to i (= and) and y (= in, into), e.g.:—

Яна́ і на фaбрыку прыйшлі... = they also came to
the factory...
Жaлі ў гoрадзе = they lived in town

16. Loss of soft labials finally and before consonants, e.g.:—

гoлу́б = pigeon
сем = seven
лю́бoў = love (cf. Russian лю́бoвь)
п'ю́ = I drink (pron. p-ju)
щэ́пка = chip

17. The hard pronunciation of all *chuintantes*, including the combinations шч, хдж (see "The Consonants"). This feature is also to be found in West Slav.

18. In common with South and West Slav, and in contrast to Great Russian and Ukrainian, Byelorussian never has a soft p, e.g.:—

пакá = river
бярoза = birch
бyра = storm
гавару́ = I speak
гразь = mud
рэзаць = to cut
бярá = take!
роў = roaring (Russian: пёв)

19. Even more than in Ukrainian the sound f is avoided in words of long-standing use in Byelorussian, e.g.:—

ахвáра = sacrifice (<Pol. ofiara)
хвáля = wave, cf. Pol. fala

(See also "The Consonants".)

20. Even more frequently than in Ukrainian, the prothetic i is used before groups of consonants, e.g.:—

ізнбў = again
іржа́ = rust
імклiвы = rushing, restless
імгла́ = mist
ільняны = flax(en)

(Morphology)

21. Widespread use of Genitive plural in -ў for nouns of all genders. (See "The Declension of Nouns" below.)

22. Imperfective Future can be formed with the suffixes -му, -меш, etc., added to the Infinitive.

23. 3rd pers. plural Present of all verbs ends in -ць, e.g.:—

разумéюць = they understand

The 3rd pers. sing. Present of i-verbs also ends in -ць, e.g.:—

сядзіць = he is sitting
сядзяць 3rd pers. plural

24. The Vocative case survives in Byelorussian, but is not used with all nouns.

FEATURES CHARACTERISTIC OF BYELORUSSIAN, GREAT RUSSIAN AND UKRAINIAN

In common with both Great Russian and Ukrainian, Byelorussian has the following features:—

25. Development of the semivowels: ь into o,

ь into e:—

O.S. сьнь Byelorussian сон = sleep
O.S. вьсь Byelorussian ўвэсь = all

26. Development of the nasal vowels: я into y,
я into я:—

муж = husband
пяць = five

27. Polnoglasie (see "Slavonic Characteristics", No. 1).

28. C.S. initial *je* changes to *vo* when stressed and to *a* when unstressed, e.g.:—

вбэра = lake
адэін = one
алёнб = stag

29. C.S. *t+j* becomes *ч*, e.g.:—

вярцэць = to turn, twist; вярцэны = turned (Past Part. Pass.)

30. *e*, *ë*, and *o* —the fill vowels when stressed, *e* and *a* when unstressed, e.g.:—

зямэль Gen. plur. = of lands
ведзер " " = of pails, also вёдраў
палацён " " = of cloths, canvases
from палатно́, Nom. pl.
палётны
дачо́к " " and Acc. plur. = (of)
daughters
ля́лек " " = of dolls
до́шак " " = of planks

31. Use of the Genitive plural for Acc. plural for animate *personal* nouns and also for animates generally, i.e. animals, as in Russian, e.g.:—

ба́чу бра́тбу́ = I see the brothers
ба́чу дачо́к = I see the daughters
and also—
ёсці ра́каў = to eat crayfish
даіць каро́ў = to milk cows

32. Original *ы* and *і* are preserved before *ј* (in contrast to Great Russian). Hence in the adjectives we have:—

злы = evil
ду́рня = stupid
такі = such
and in the verbs:—
пі[й] = drink!
лі[й] = pour!
м'яю = I wash
м'яю = I sew
пад'яці = to approach
ад'яці = to go away

Likewise in the nouns we have *-ы-* preserved in the roots, e.g.:—

шыя = neck
шамбі = slops

This feature is also to be found in West and South Slav.

BYELORUSSIAN MORPHOLOGY

Owing to the "phonetic" spelling of the vowels in Byelorussian its declensions and conjugations give the *appearance* of being totally different (in part at least) from those in any other Slavonic language. But if the student bears in mind the similar modification of unstressed vowels in Great Russian, which underlies the apparent (spelling) uniformity of flexion in that language, he will realize the fundamental similarity of the declensions and conjugations in Byelorussian to those in Russian and other Slavonic languages. For what *in fact* is the case, is merely this: that owing to this "phonetic" spelling, declensions and conjugations with final stress are spelt differently from those with non-final stress.

Byelorussian morphology does, however, have features peculiarly its own. Very striking is the absence of *-a* as the ending of neuter nouns in the plural; it is replaced by *-ы* for hard stems and *-і* for soft stems. The spread of the ending *-оў* (soft version: *-ёў*) and *-аў* (soft: *-яў*)—unstressed, for the Genitive plural of some feminine and neuter nouns, as well as masculine, is also noticeable. The old termination *-і* has been preserved for the Locative singular of many nouns with soft stems and also for the Dative singular of feminine soft nouns. These cases terminate with *-ы* after *p* and *chuintantes*, another Byelorussian peculiarity.

In the declension of adjectives the endings of the Genitive singular feminine (*-оe*, *-ae*) and the Nominative plural (*-ыя*) are noteworthy. While the Personal Pronouns of the third person *ён*, *яна́*, *яно́*, *яна́* are unique with their prefixed *yo*.

In the conjugation of the verbs, the termination *-ць* for the 3rd person singular and plural Present has already been noted. As in Ukrainian the 2nd person plural Present of finally stressed verbs is stressed on the *second* syllable of the ending, e.g.:—

неся́це

Otherwise the main features of modern Slavonic morphology are preserved: the three genders and the two numbers, the dual having been lost. The Vocative case is obsolescent, but the other six cases are in full use.

THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS

Hard and soft varieties of declension have already been mentioned. The familiar types of noun declensions survive:—

- ī-stems —feminine,
- consonantal stems—neuter,
- a-stems —mostly feminine,
- o-stems —masculine and neuter.

The ū-stems leave many traces in the masculine declensions.

The Accusative of masculine animate nouns is the same as the Genitive in the singular, but in the plural Acc.=Gen. for all nouns denoting animate beings (see "Characteristics of Byelorussian", No. 31, for examples).

1. ī-stems, only feminine, ending in a soft consonant or *chuintante* or -ŭ (from -въ):—

кось = bone; кроў = blood; рэч = thing

	Stressing ending	Stressing stem:
SINGULAR		
Nom.	кроў	рэч
Gen.	краві ¹	рэчы
Dat.	краві ¹	рэчы
Acc.	кось	рэч
Instr.	косьцю	рэччу
Loc.	краві ¹	рэчы
PLURAL		
Nom.	косьці	рэчы
Gen.	касьці	рэчаў
Dat.	касьцям	рэчам
Acc.	косьці	рэчы
Instr.	касьцімі (касьцімі ¹)	рэчамі
Loc.	касьцях	рэчах

The ending of the Genitive plural is either -ёй (-ёй) or -аў.

¹For these cases, the Academy Grammar, Граматыка беларускай мовы, vol. 1, 1962, gives the form: касьці, used in certain phrases after prepositions, e.g. На касьці = on the bone.

Мяці can have this one form for all cases of the singular and plural. It can also decline as follows: Sing. N. маці, G.D.L. мацеры, A. мацеры, I. мацерай (-аю), Plur. N. мацеры, G.A. мацярэй, D. мацяр-ам, I. -амі, L. -ах.

Pluralia tantum belonging to this declension are:—

- сэні = entrance hall
- грўдзі = breast
- гўслі = dulcimer
- дзвэры = door

Like the plural of the above are declined:—

- кўры = hens, G. курэй, D. курам
- сусэды = neighbours (from сусэд)
- чэрці = devils (from чорт)
- людзі = people (from люд), I. людзямі

2. Consonant stems, with -н- and -ц/-т-. Neuters only. Those with -н- all end in -мя in the Nom. sing. Those with -ц- in the singular and -т- in the plural all denote young beings or else things.

	ім'я = name	Plural
Nom.	ім'я	імёны, імi
Gen.	імені, ім'я	імён(аў), ім'яў
Dat.	імёнi, імю	імёнам, ім'ям
Acc.	ім'я	імёны, імi
Instr.	іменем, імем	імёнамі, ім'ямi
Loc.	імені, імi	імёнах, ім'ях
		ягня = lamb
Nom.	ягня, ягнэ	ягняты
Gen.	ягняці	ягнят(аў)
Dat.	ягняці	ягням
Acc.	ягня, ягнэ	ягнят
Instr.	ягнём	ягнятамі
Loc.	ягняці	ягнях

бярэмя (= armful), сэмя (= seed), пльмя (= flame), в'мя (= udder), цэмя (= crown of the head) are declined without the syllable -ен-, see ім'я.

Those like ягня all have the alternative ending -ё (or -о after a *chuintante*), e.g.:—

- дзёуб or дзёуба = girl
- княжб or княжа = young duke

кóла (= a wheel) has a plural калёсы (= vehicle) besides its normal plural кóлы (= wheels).
не́ба (= sky) has a plural нябёсы.

3. *a*-stems, mostly feminine.

The hard stem endings have replaced the original soft stem endings in the Gen. sing. and Nom. Acc. plural of the soft, *ja*-stem version of this declension, as in Ukrainian; but the original soft declension ending -i has been preserved in the Dat. and Loc. sing. Instr. sing. ends in either -ю or -й.

The difference between finally stressed and non-finally stressed nouns in this declension is only apparent in the spelling of the Instr. sing. of both hard and soft nouns and in the Dat., Loc. sing. of velar stems, the unstressed having -ы, a peculiarity of Byelorussian.

Hard stems:

галава́ = head калі́на = quelder rose
Final stress: *Non-final stress:*

SINGULAR			
Nom.	галава́	калі́на	калі́на
Gen.	галава́	калі́ны	калі́ны
Dat.	галава́	калі́не	калі́не
Acc.	галаву́	калі́ну	калі́ню
Instr.	галава́ю (-й)	калі́наю (-й)	калі́наю (-й)
Loc.	галава́	калі́не	калі́не
PLURAL			
Nom.	гало́вы	калі́ны	калі́ны
Gen.	галбу́	калі́н	калі́н
Dat.	галова́м	калі́нам	калі́нам
Acc.	галбо́вы	калі́ны	калі́ны
Instr.	галова́мі	калі́намі	калі́намі
Loc.	галова́х	калі́нах	калі́нах

Velar stems:

рука́ = hand го́рка = hillock
Final stress: *Non-final stress:*

SINGULAR			
Nom.	рука́	го́рка	го́рка
Gen.	рука́	го́рки	го́рки
Dat.	руца́	го́рцы	го́рцы
Acc.	руку́	го́рку	го́рку
Instr.	рука́ю (-й)	го́ркаю (-й)	го́ркаю (-й)
Loc.	руца́	го́рцы	го́рцы

PLURAL			
Nom.	ру́кі	го́ркі	го́ркі
Gen.	рук	го́рак	го́рак
Dat.	рука́м	го́рка́м	го́рка́м
Acc.	ру́кі	го́ркі	го́ркі
Instr.	рука́мі	го́рка́мі	го́рка́мі
Loc.	рука́х	го́рка́х	го́рка́х

Soft stems:

зямя́ = earth, land доля́ = portion, lot

SINGULAR		PLURAL	SINGULAR
Nom.	зямя́	зе́млі	до́ля
Gen.	зямя́	зяме́ль	до́лі
Dat.	зямя́	зе́млям	до́лі
Acc.	зямя́	зе́млі	до́лю
Instr.	зямя́ю (-й)	зе́млямі	до́ляю (-й)
Loc.	зямя́	зе́млях	до́лі

Hardened (originally soft) stems:

за́ра = dawn, twilight; star

SINGULAR		PLURAL
Nom.	за́ра	зо́рбы
Gen.	за́рбы	зо́ры
Dat.	за́рбы	зо́брам
Acc.	за́ру	зо́рбы
Instr.	за́раю (-й)	зо́брамі
Loc.	за́рбы	зо́брах

No *a*-stems have finally stressed plurals.

In this declension the Dat. and Loc. sing. are always the same. Velar stems undergo the 2nd Palatalization before the final -э or -ы of Dat. and Loc. sing. Stems in -т- and -д-, of course, end in -це, -дзе in Dat. and Loc. sing., e.g.:—

раба́та (= work), Dat., Loc. sing.: раба́це

All nouns with stems in -р, -ц, -ж, -ш and -ш as well as non-finally stressed ones in -к) have the ending -ы in these cases, as well as in the Gen. sing. (except for those in -к), e.g.:—

душа́ from душа́ = soul
ву́лицы from ву́лица = street

The Gen. plural either has no ending (with the insertion of a fill-vowel in some consonantal groups)

¹The ending -аў occurs in feminine nouns only after consonant groups, e.g. ко́ўдраў = of blankets.

or else rarely -аў for hard stems and -аў for soft stems (from the masc. nouns). Ру́к from рука́ (= hand) and ног from нага́ (= leg, foot) never have this ending.

Masc. nouns in -а are declined exactly like the above, except that in the Dat. and Loc. sing. they can end in -у (-ю) and in the Instr. sing. many prefer the ending -ам (-ём). E.g.:-

ста́роста	= village head,	D.L.s. ста́расту (-це)
судзі́я	= judge,	I.s. ста́растам
саба́ка	м./ = dog,	D.L.s. судзі́ю (-і)
		I.s. судзі́ём
		D.L.s. саба́ку
		I.s. саба́кам

4a. Masculine o-stems.

In the singular the differences between the old hard and soft declensions are preserved, e.g. the Loc. sing. of soft stems in -і. In the plural of finally stressed hard stems the old й-stem ending -овъ, now -оў, predominates in the Gen. In the modern literary language the old fem. endings with -а- have now been generalized for the Dat., Instr. and Loc. plur., which have -ам, -амі, -ах respectively.

In the non-finally stressed nouns a replaces o in the endings of the Instr. sing. and Gen. plural in the hard stems, and correspondingly e replaces é in the Instr. sing. and я replaces é in the Gen. plural of the soft stems.

Finally stressed hard stems:

СТОЛ = table пясóк = sand дождж = rain

SINGULAR			
Nom.	СТОЛ ¹	пясóк ²	дождж ³
Gen.	сталá	пяску́	дажджóу
Dat.	сталу́	пяску́	дажджóу
Acc.	стол	пясóк	дождж
Instr.	сталóм	пяскóм	дажджóм
Loc.	сталé	пяску́	дажджé

¹Exactly like стол are declined the animate hard stems, e.g.: ВОЛ (= ox), but they have their Acc. sing. and Acc. plur. like their Gen. sing. and plur. respectively, e.g. волá, волóу.

²The old u-stem ending -у predominates in the Gen. and Loc. sing. of most velar stems, though we have the animate хвалькó (= boaster) with Gen. sing. хвалькá but Loc. sing. хвалькóу.

³канéц (= end) has Gen. sing. канéа, otherwise it goes like дождж.

PLURAL			
Nom.	сталы́	пяскí	дажджé
Gen.	сталóу	пяскóу	дажджóу
Dat.	сталáм	пяскáм	дажджáм
Acc.	сталы́	пяскí	дажджé
Instr.	сталáмі	пяскáмі	дажджáмі
Loc.	сталáх	пяскáх	дажджáх

Non-finally stressed hard stems:

брат = brother народ = people

SINGULAR			
Nom.	брат	народ	
Gen.	брáта	нарóду, -а	
Dat.	брáту	нарóду	
Acc.	брáта	народ	
Instr.	брáтам	нарóдам	
Loc.	брáту	нарóдзе	
PLURAL			
Nom.	браты́	нарды́	
Gen.	брáтоу	нарóдау	
Dat.	брáтам	нарóдам	
Acc.	брáтоу	нарды́	
Instr.	брáтамі	нарóдамі	
Loc.	брáтах	нарóдах	

Soft stems:

лось = elk

лóкаць = elbow

Finally stressed

Non-finally stressed

SINGULAR			
Nom.	лось	лóкаць	
Gen.	лася́	лóкця	
Dat.	ласóу	лóкцю	
Acc.	лася́	лóкаць	
Instr.	ласéм	лóкце́м	
Loc.	ласí	лóкці	
PLURAL			
Nom.	ласí	лóкці	
Gen.	ласéу	лóкцяу	
Dat.	лася́м	лóкця́м	
Acc.	ласéу	лóкці	
Instr.	лася́мі	лóкця́мі	
Loc.	лася́х	лóкця́х	

КОЊ = horse звбчай = custom
Shifting stress *Non-finally stressed*
and irregular *j-stem*

SINGULAR

Nom. КОЊ звбчай¹
 Gen. канџ звбчаю
 Dat. канџо звбчаю
 Acc. канџа звбчай
 Instr. канџэм звбчаем
 Loc. канџі звбчаі

PLURAL

Nom. канџі² звбчаі
 Gen. канџей звбчаюў
 Dat. канџям звбчаюм
 Acc. канџей звбчаі
 Instr. канџямі звбчаюмі
 Loc. канџях звбчаюх

(1) There is no absolute rule as to when the *Gen. sing.* ends in -а (soft -я) and when in -у (soft -ю). Animate nouns, the names of visible objects, organizations, places, measures, definitions, parts of the body, the names of the months and days have -а, e.g.:—

воўка or ваўка́ from воўк = wolf
 нос́а from нос = nose
 сакавіка́ from сакавік = March

Other masculine nouns mostly have -у.

(2) The regular ending for the *Loc. sing.* of hard stems is -е, before which a few velar stems undergo the 2nd Palatalization, e.g.:—

гаро́х = pea(s)
 у гаро́се = in the pea(s)

Inanimate nouns with stems in р, ц or the *chuintantes* ж, ш, ч, have -ы, e.g.:—

бор = coniferous forest, у бары́ = in the forest
 нож = knife, на на́жы = on the knife

¹A finally stressed *j*-stem such as *вєрабџ* (= sparrow), follows the declension of *лось* exactly, forming the cases from the stem *вєраб'-*, e.g.: *Gen. sing. вєраб'я*, *Gen. pl. вєраб'џу*.

²These forms with initial stress have the collective meaning of "horse(s)". When considered individually in numbers, forms with final stress are used: *N. канџ*, *G.A. канџу*,

D. канџам, *I. канџамі*, *L. канџах*.

But animate nouns with such stems have -у, e.g. —
 аб купц́у = about the merchant
 пры Рыгору́ = near Gregory

Nouns with stems in -к nearly always have -у, e.g.:—

аб ваўку́ = about the wolf
 аб чалавџку́ = about the man

and most nouns with stems in -г and -х, e.g.:—

у кругу́ = in a circle
 у смџу́ = in laughter

The regular *Loc. sing.* ending for all soft stems is -і, e.g.:—

аб вєраб'і́ = about a sparrow
 аб салаўі́ = about a nightingale

Some occasionally have -ю, e.g.:—

на каню́ as well as на кані́ = on a horse

(3) The *Loc. sing.* is occasionally used for masc. nouns. It ends in—

-е for most hard stems, e.g.:—

браце́! = brother!

-у for к-stems, e.g.:—

сџнку́! = sonny!

-а after *chuintantes*, e.g.:—

воўча́! = wolf!

-ю for soft stems, e.g.:—

госцю́! = guest!

(4) A few nouns have no ending in the *Gen. plural*, e.g.:—

дзень (= day), *Gen. plur.* дзџн
 пяць чалавџк = five people

and all nouns with *Nom. sing.* in -анін, -янін, -ін, -ын have such a *Gen. plur.*, e.g.:—

грамадзя́нін (= citizen), *Gen. plur.* грамадзя́н

The nouns in -анін, -янін drop the syllable -ін- in the plural and have *Nom. plur.* e.g. грамадзя́не, *Dat. plur.* грамадзя́нам, etc.

A few nouns have Gen. plur. in -ей, e.g.:--

коне́й	= of horses,	from конь
гасце́й	= of guests,	from гасць
людзе́й	= of people,	from людзі (i-stem)
лапце́й	= of bast shoes,	from лапаць

4b. Neuter *o*-stems.

These end in -o when finally stressed and hard, and in -ë when finally stressed and soft. Non-finally stressed neuters end in -a when hard [sic] and -я when soft. Soft stems preserve the old Loc. sing. ending -i, while stems in p, ц and the *chuintantes* have -ы in this case.

Nom., Voc. and Acc. are always the same as each other in each number. The regular ending of the Nom., Voc., Acc. plural is -ы [sic] for hard stems and -i for soft stems. Otherwise the same correspondences of vowels in terminations hold good as for masc. *o*-stems. Notice also the shifting of the stress in the plurals.

Finally stressed (but not in plural):

сяло́ = large village плячо́ = shoulder
Hard stem *Chuintante stem*

SINGULAR		
Nom.	сяло́	плячо́
Gen.	сяла́	пляча́
Dat.	сялу́	плячу́
Acc.	сяло́	плячо́
Instr.	сяло́м	плячо́м
Loc.	сяле́	плячы́
PLURAL		
Nom.	се́лы	плéчы
Gen.	се́л(аў)	плячэ́й
Dat.	се́лам	пляча́м
Acc.	се́лы	плéчы
Instr.	се́ламі	пляча́мі
Loc.	се́лах	пляча́х

Non-finally stressed:

пале́на = log мбра = sea
Hard stem r-stem

SINGULAR		
Nom.	пале́на	мбра
Gen.	пале́на	мбра
Dat.	пале́ну	мбру
Acc.	пале́на	мбра
Instr.	пале́нам	мбра́м
Loc.	пале́не	мбры
PLURAL		
Nom.	пале́ны	мбры
Gen.	пале́наў	мбраў
Dat.	пале́нам	мбра́м
Acc.	пале́ны	мбры
Instr.	пале́намі	мбра́мі
Loc.	пале́нах	мбра́х

Finally stressed *Non-finally stressed*
soft stems: *soft stems:*

	жыццэ́ = life	пóле = field	здарэ́нне = event
			(Like по́ле in singular)
SING.			
Nom.	жыццэ́	по́ле	здарэ́нне
Gen.	жыццэ́я	по́ля	
Dat.	жыццэ́ю	по́лю	
Acc.	жыццэ́	по́ле	
Instr.	жыццэ́м	по́лем	
Loc.	жыццэ́і	по́лі	
		(Plural finally stressed)	(Plural non-finally stressed in:—)
PLUR.			
Nom.	(None)	палі́	здарэ́нні
Gen.		палéў	здарэ́нняў
Dat.		палéям	здарэ́нням
Acc.		палі́	здарэ́нні
Instr.		палéямі	здарэ́ннямі
Loc.		палéях	здарэ́ннях

The rule for the ending of the Loc. sing. is the same as for masc. *o*-stems. *x*- and *k*-stems have -у, e.g.:—

ве́ка = lid, Loc. sing. аб ве́ку; but малако́
= milk, has (у) малаца́.

The *Gen. plural* can also have no ending, with a fill-vowel appearing in difficult consonant groups, e.g.:—

вядрб = rail, *Gen. plur.* вядзер or вядраў
акнб = window, *Gen. plur.* акн or вкнаў

Notice ярмб (= yoke), *Nom. plur.* ёрмы.

After the numerals два (= two), тры (= three), чатыры (= four), "false" Dual forms are used:—

два, тры, чатыры сялбы, вядрб, вакнб,
ярмб, cf. *Nom. plur.:* сёлы, вёдры, вкны,
ёрмы.

(For *feminine* nouns the "false" Dual is the same in form as the *Gen. sing.*, e.g.:—

трубá = pipe, *Gen. sing.* трубы, *Nom. plur.* тру́бы,
but—дзве трубы = two pipes.)

во́ка (= eye) and вў́ха (= ear) are irregular and are declined as follows:—

SING.			
Nom.	во́ка	вў́ха	(also вухб)
Gen.	во́ка	вў́ха	
Dat.	во́ку	вў́ху	
Acc.	во́ка	вў́ха	
Instr.	во́кам	вў́хам	
Loc.	во́ку	вў́ху	
PLUR.			
Nom.	во́чы	вў́шы	
Gen.	ва́чэй	вў́шэй	
Dat.	ва́чам	вў́шам	
Acc.	во́чы	вў́шы	
Instr.	ва́чамі	вў́шамі	
Loc.	ва́чах	вў́шах	

THE NUMERALS

Cardinal.—In Byelorussian, as in Ukrainian and West Slav (and in Old Slavonic), the numbers 1-4 are adjectival and agree with the noun they qualify in case (and gender for "one" and "two"). Two, three and four are followed by the noun in the plural, if masculine, in the *Nom.* when subject, in the *Acc.* when object, etc., and by "false" Dual forms for feminine and neuter nouns (see examples under Neuter *o*-stems, p. 212). 5, 6 onwards are nouns and are followed by the noun in the *Gen. plural*, when they themselves are in the *Nom.* as subject or in the *Acc.* as object; in

the other cases they agree with the noun they qualify. The declension of адзін (= one) follows in the main the hard adjectival declension (q.v. below), but the peculiar terminations, partly due to final stress, should be noted when they occur, viz.:—

SING.	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Plur. (All genders)</i>
Nom.	адзін	адно́	адна́	адны́
Gen.	аднаго́	адно́	адно́й (аднаé)	адных
Dat.	аднаму́	адно́	адно́й	адным
Acc.	(=Nom. or Gen.) адно́	адну́	(=Nom. or Gen.) адно́й	адным
Instr.	адным	адно́й (-о́ю)	адно́й	аднымі
Loc.	адным	адно́й	адно́й	адных

два (= two) varies according to gender and should also be noted:—

	<i>Masc. and Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom.	два	дзве
Gen.	двух	дзвюх
Dat.	двум	дзвюм
Acc.	два	дзве
Instr.	двума́	дзвюма́
Loc.	двух	дзвюх

Like два, абд́ва (= both).

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Gen./Loc.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Instr.</i>
1	адзін	адна́	адно́	(see above)	
2	два	дзве	два		
3	тры			трох	трыма́
4	чатыры			чатырбх	чатырбма́
5	пяць			пяці	пяціб
6	шэсць			шэсці	
7	сем				
8	восем			васьмі	васьмб
9	дзевяць				
10	дзэсяць				
11	адзінаццаць				
12	дванаццаць				
13	трынаццаць				
14	чатырнаццаць				
15	пятнаццаць				
16	шаснаццаць				
17	семнаццаць				
18	васемнаццаць				
19	дзевятнаццаць				
20	дваццаць				
21	дваццаць адзін				
30	трыццаць				
40	сбрак			сарака́	сарака́

50	пяцьдзесят	G. I. D. пяцідзесяці	I. пяцідзесяці
60	шэсцьдзесят	decline like пяцьдзесят	
70	сэмідзесят	decline like пяцьдзесят	
80	восемдзесят	decline like пяцьдзесят	
90	дзевяноста	(invariable)	
100	сто	ста	ста
101	сто адзін		
200	дзвэсце	G. двухст L. двухстах D. двумстам	
	I. двумастамі		
300	трыста	decline like дзвэсце	
400	чатырыста		
500	пяцьсот	G. пяцісот L. пяцістах D. пяцістам	
	I. пяцюстамі		
600	шэсцьсот	decline like пяцьсот	
700	семсот		
800	восемсот		
900	дзевяцьсот		
1,000	тысяча		
2,000	дзве тысячы		
1,000,000	мільён		

The numerals from 50 to 80 need not be declined in colloquial speech.

The hundreds may also be left undeclined, or decline as above.

<i>Masc. and neut.</i>	<i>fem.</i>
паўтарá	паўтарá
паўтраця́	(=1½)
(паўчварта́	(=2½)
(паўпята́	(=3½)
	(=4½)

are not declined.

Ordinal.—The Ordinal Numerals are all declined like the hard-stem adjective босы (= barefoot), except the velar stem другі́ (= second), the soft stem трэ́ці (= third), and the finally stressed hard stem саракав́і (= fortieth), which follows сляп́і (= blind). (For full declension see "Adjectives".)

In compound Ordinals only the last element is ordinal, as in "101st" below.

1st	пéршы	7th	сéмы
2nd	другі́	8th	вóсьмы
3rd	трэ́ці	9th	дзевя́ты
4th	чацвё́рты	10th	дзеся́ты
5th	пяты́	11th	адзіна́ццаты
6th	шóсты	12th	двана́ццаты

¹ These forms are rare. There is also: паўчачвэртá, —á = 3½.

13th	трына́ццаты	40th	саракав́і
14th	чатырна́ццаты	50th	пяцідзеся́ты
15th	пятна́ццаты	60th	шэсцідзеся́ты
16th	шасна́ццаты	70th	семідзеся́ты
17th	семна́ццаты	80th	васьмідзеся́ты
18th	васемна́ццаты	90th	дзевяно́бсты
19th	дзевятна́ццаты	100th	сбты
20th	дваццáты	101st	сто пéршы
21st	дваццаць пéршы	200th	двухста́ты
30th	трыцца́ты	300th	трохста́ты ¹

Collective.—Collective numerals are used for nouns of mixed gender, e.g. "a man and a woman," or "a mare (кабы́ла, fem.) and a foal (жараба́й, neut.)." Similarly, абэ́ (= both) is used for nouns of mixed gender, while абд́ва is used for masc. and neut. nouns and абэ́дзвэ for fem. nouns, e.g.:—

абд́ва бра́та́, вакна́ = both brothers, windows
 абэ́дзвэ ся́стра́, сакá = both sisters, ploughs
 ("False" Dual forms are used with neut. and fem. nouns, it will be observed. Cf. p. 212.)

Nom.	Двóе ² = two	чацвэ́ра ³ = four
Gen.	дваі́х	чацвя́рэх
Dat.	дваім	чацвя́рэм
Acc.	(= Nom. or Gen.)	(Nom. or Gen.)
Inst.	дваі́мі	чацвя́рэмí
Loc.	дваі́х	чацвя́рэх

Distributive.—Distributive numerals are expressed by па + Cardinal numerals, e.g.:—

па два = two each

THE PRONOUNS

The declension of the 3rd person Personal Pronoun gives a clue to the adjectival declension in Byelorussian too, but owing to the difference in the position of the stress and the phonetic spelling, this is less obvious at first glance.

¹ 1000th = тры́сячыны, 1,000,000th = мільё́нны.

² абэ́ (= both) and трóе (= three) are identically declined.

³ The remaining Collectives, пяцэ́ра (= five) onwards, are declined like чацвэ́ра, though they can be left undeclined.

		МОЙ = MY	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	PLUR.
МОЙ	маё	маёй	<i>All genders</i>
		маёй	маё
	майго	маёй	майх
	майму	маёй	майм
= Nom. or Gen.	маё	маёй (-ю)	= Nom. or Gen.
Inst.	майм	маёй	маймі
Loc.	майм		майх

ЧЬЙ = WHOSE? тВОЙ = YOUR(S), СВОЙ = (ONE'S) OWN,

		САМ = -SELF	
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	PLUR.
САМ	самб	самб	<i>All genders</i>
		самб	самі
	самбога	самб, самае	саміх
	самбому	самб	самім
= Nom. or Gen.	самб	саму (ю)	саміх
Inst.	самім	самб (ю)	самімі
Loc.	самім	самб	саміх

The Personal Pronouns

	ён = he	яно = it	яна = she	яны = they
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	PLUR: <i>All genders</i>
ён	яно	яно	яна	яны
			яё	ix ¹
	яго		ёй	ix ¹
	яму		яё	ix ¹
	яго		ёй (ёю)	ix ¹
	ім ¹		ёй	ix ¹
	ім ¹			

After prepositions the *same* forms are used, without *н* prefixed, in contrast to other Slavonic languages. ЯГО can be used for "his" and "its", ЯЕ for "her"—Possessive (they are both invariable), but also the declinable ЯГОНЫ = his, its, ёйны = her(s).

SING.			
Nom.	Я = I	ты = You (familiar)	
Gen.	мяне	цябе	
Dat.	мне	цябе	
Acc.	мяне	цябе	
Inst.	мно́й (-ю)	табой (-ю)	
Loc.	мне	табе	

¹ Forms with initial *i* in the spelling are all pronounced with initial *ji*: phon. *jim, jix, 'jimi*.

PLUR.	Мы = we	Вы = You
Nom.	нас	вас
Gen.	нам	вам
Dat.	нас	вас
Acc.	на́мі	ва́мі
Inst.	нас	вас
Loc.		

Сябе (= -self) follows the declension of ты without the Nom.

ADJECTIVES

The declension of adjectives in Byelorussian falls into four main types:—

- (a) hard stems, finally stressed,
- (b) hard stems, non-finally stressed,
- (c) soft stems (these are never finally stressed),
- (d) Possessive adjectives.

Stems in a *chuintante* belong to the hard-stem category (b), e.g. гара́чы = hot.

Stems in a velar (including surnames in -ски) also belong to the hard stems, but substitute *i* for *ы* in all the endings which contain *ы* in the ordinary hard declension.

The ending of the Nom. sing. masc. is monosyllabic, but those of the Nom. sing. fem. and neut. and of the Nom. plural (for all genders) are dissyllabic, as in Great Russian.

The Acc. sing. masc. = Gen. sing. masc. for animate nouns, but = Nom. sing. masc. for inanimate nouns. The Acc. plur. = Gen. plur. for animate nouns of all genders.

In contrast to Russian, the Instr. and Loc. sing. masc. and neut. are the same, both ending in -ым (soft -im).

The dissyllabic ending in the Gen. sing. fem. is peculiar to Byelorussian (cf. Lusatian).

(a) сляпá = blind; (b) ббсы = barefoot; (c) сiнi = blue

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	PLUR. <i>All genders</i>
сляпá	сляпбе	сляпбя	сляпбя
сляпбá	сляпбога	сляпбi (-e)	сляпбix
сляпбóму	сляпбóму	сляпбi	сляпбim
= Nom. or Gen.	сляпбе	сляпбу	= Nom. or Gen.
Inst.	сляпбi	сляпбi (-ю)	сляпбi
Loc.	сляпбim	сляпбix	сляпбix

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>PLUR. All genders</i>
Nom. бобы	бобае	ббсай	ббсыя
Gen. ббсага	ббсаму	ббсай(-е)	ббсых
Dat. ббсаму	ббсаму	ббсай	ббсым
Acc. = Nom. or Gen.	ббсае	ббсую	= Nom. or Gen.
Inst. ббсым		ббсай(-ю)	ббсымі
Loc. ббсым		ббсай	ббсых
Nom. сніі	сіняе	сіняя	сінія
Gen. сіняга	сіняму	сіняй(-е)	сініх
Dat. сіняму	сіняму	сіняй	сінім
Acc. = Nom. or Gen.	сіняе	сінюю	= Nom. or Gen.
Inst. сніім		сіняй(-ю)	сінімі
Loc. сніім		сіняй	сініх

There also exists a short form of the adjectives, mostly used predicatively and in poetry. It is not usually declined.

The terminations for the Nom., then, are:—

Masc. sing.: no ending (with a fill-vowel in consonant groups) (soft -ь)

Fem. sing.: -а (soft -я)

Neut. sing.: -о́ or -а (soft -я)

Plural all genders: -ы (soft -і), e.g.:—

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>PLURAL</i>
грэ́зны	грэ́зен	грэ́зна	грэ́зны
чорны	чбран	чбрна	чбрны
по́ўны	по́вен	по́ўна	по́ўны
сі́ні	сінь	сі́ня	сі́ні

Possessive adjectives in -скі such as бацькаўскі (= father's), are declined like the hard (velar) stems above. Those in -ў and -н have special endings of their own only in the Nom. s. and pl. and Acc. s. fem., viz.:—

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>PLUR. All genders</i>
Nom.	ма́тчын	ма́тчына	ма́тчына	ма́тчыны
Gen.	ма́тчынага ¹	ма́тчына	ма́тчынай(-ае)	ма́тчыных
Dat.	ма́тчынаму	ма́тчынаму	ма́тчынай	ма́тчыным
Acc. = Nom. or Gen.	ма́тчына	ма́тчыну	ма́тчыну	= Nom. or Gen.
Inst.	ма́тчыным	ма́тчынай	ма́тчынай	ма́тчынымі
Loc.	ма́тчыным	ма́тчынай	ма́тчынай	ма́тчыных

So also: бацькаў, бацькавага, etc. = father's.

¹ Only possessive adjectives formed from names have Gen. sing. masc. and neut. in -а, e.g. Рыгораў = Gregory's, Gen. s. m., n. Рыграва.

THE COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Adjectives expressing a quality, colour, etc., have three degrees of comparison. The Comparative is formed by adding -ейшы, -ейшая (-эйшы, -эйшая), etc., to the root of the Positive. The Superlative is formed by prefixing най- to the Comparative, or with самы, etc. + the Positive.

Positive: зялёны, -ая, -ае = green
нізкі, -ая, -ае = low
сіні, -ая, -ае = blue
строгі, -ая, -ае = strict

Comparative: зялёнэйшы, -ая, -ае
ніжэйшы, -ая, -ае
сінейшы, -ая, -ае
стражэйшы, -ая, -ае

Superlative: (за ўсіх, ад усіх) найзялёнэйшы, -ая, -ае
(за ўсіх, ад усіх) найсінейшы, -ая, -ае
or else—

самы зялёны, самая зялёная, etc.
самы сіні, etc.

Notice the irregular comparison of the following adjectives:—

добра́, <i>Sup.</i>	ле́пшы	найле́пшы
благі́,	ле́пшы	найле́пшы
дрэ́жны	= good	
малы́	= bad	найго́ршы
вялі́кі	= small	etc.
шыро́кі	= big	
глыбо́кі	= broad	
ву́зкі	= deep	
	= narrow	
N.B. малады́	= young	маладзё́йшы, but малады́ = junior

The Comparative and Superlative degrees follow the declension of the Positive hard stem ббсы.

Very = вельмі, дужа
Than = чым, чымся, ніж, як

or—

за + Acc., e.g.:—
няма́ бо́лей за пяць = there are no
more than five

Rather better (adj.) = крыху́ ле́пшы
Rather good = досыць добра́
Less than = менш чым
The bigger...the better = чым бо́льшы...
тым ле́пшы

As (big) *as* = таксама вялікі як
 As soon as possible = як (or чым or што) найхутчэй
 As fast as possible = магчыма як найхутчэй
 The very best of all = найлепшы за ўсіх, найлепшы ад усіх
 Too = (за)надта; too much = за шмат
 The same as = той самы што
 In the same way as = таксама, як

ADVERBS

Adverbs of manner, formed from adjectives, end in -a (unstressed), e.g.:—

добра = good—добра = well
 благі = bad—блага = badly (with shifted stress)

Adverbs from adjectives in -ski, however, have па- prefixed and end in -y, e.g.:—

беларускі = Byelorussian, пабеларуску = in Byelorussian.

Comparative adverbs are formed from the stem of comparative adjectives and either have no ending or end in -ей (-эй, -ай).

Superlative adverbs are formed by prefixing най- to Comparative adverbs.

Notice the following important irregular comparisons:—

добра	= well	—лепш (or лепей)
блага	= badly	найлепш (or найлепей)
дрэнна		—горш (or гбрай)
мнбога	= much	найтбрш (or найгбрай)
шмат		—больш (or бблей)
мала	= a little—	найбольш or найбблей
крыху		менш (or мёней)
скбра	= quickly—	найменш or наймёней
хутка		скарэй, хутчэй
ббрзда	= white	найскарэй, найхутчэй
бёла		—бялёй
глыбёка	= deep	наибялёй
		—глыбэй
		найтлыбэй

шмат is generally used for "many", e.g.:—

шмат вераб'ёў = many (a lot of) sparrows

Other adverbs of place, time, manner, etc., have no uniform endings. Here are some of the commonest:—

Place: тут = here дзесь(ці) = somewhere
 там = there нідзе = nowhere
 сюды = hither звонку = from outside
 туды = thither уперад = forwards
 адсюль = hence назад = backwards
 адтуль = thence дагарба = up
 блізка = near дадбалу } = down
 усюды = everywhere дамбў }
 дадому } = home (ward)

Time: цяпер (ака) = now нёкалі = at one time, once
 дагэтуль = till now дагэтуль }
 потым = then паўдзень }
 сёння = to-day зраза = immediately
 сягоння } часам = at times
 учбра = yesterday загалдзя = in good time
 зўтра = to-morrow заўсёды = always
 пазаўчбра = the day ніколі = never
 before yesterday скбра = soon
 лётась = last year ужбж } = just
 сёлета = this year якрэз }
 потым = afterwards наканёц }
 улётку = in summer ўрўшце } = at last
 узімку = in winter усцяж } = all the time
 увосень = in autumn нядаўна } = recently
 увясну = in spring зразу } = suddenly
 п'оначы = by night раптам }
 даўно = a long time ago

Manner: так = thus відаць = evidently
 ббрзда } маўляў, = like; he says
 хутка } моў (when quoting)
 разам = together дарма = in vain
 сілком = by force (с)умасна = on purpose
 іначай, інакш = otherwise хбраша = beautifully, fine

Degree: вёльмі = very давблі, дбосьць = enough
 дўжа = much, very гбдзе = enough! that will do!
 толькі = only блізка (што), бязмала }
 крыху = a little = almost
 ледзь (ве) = hardly саўсім, зусім = quite
 мбжа = perhaps прынамсі = at least
 двбйчы = twice, doubly нават, навет = even

Interrogative:

калі? = when? як? = how?
 дзе? = where? колькі? = how much?
 куды? = whither? чаму? = why?
 адкуль? = from where? навішта? нашто? = what for?

ці interrogative particle introducing a question, cf. Russ. ли, Polish czy, etc.; also = or

хіба = I suppose, I expect (in questions), really?

няўжэ = not...really...?

Not = не no = не yes = так, але.

CONJUNCTIONS

The most important conjunctions in Byelorussian are:—

Coordinating:—

і	= and
а	= but, and (contrasting)
але	= but
ды	= but, and
дык	= so, then
(абб...) абб,	
(альбб)	= or; either...or
аж, ажнб	= even; till, so that
(ані...) ані	= not even; neither...nor
аднак	= however
тож, таксама	= also
як	= as
чым(ся)	= than
бшцам	= as if
нібы	
ж, жа	is an emphatic particle

Subordinating:—

каб	= that, so that, in order that
калі	= when, if
як	= although, at least
хоць, хаця	= that
што	= as, because
тамў што	= provided that, if only
абд	= because, for
бо	= until, while
пакўль	= as soon as, hardly
ледзь	

што introduces a subordinate clause and can vary in meaning according to the word in the main clause anticipating it (not translated into English), e.g.:—

загэ, загам, адтагб...што = because

Certain words, such as прынамсі (= at least), по́тым (= afterwards), так (= so), то́лькі (= only), на́вар (= even) can be regarded as either conjunctions or adverbs. Note: балазе́ = since, once (cf. Russian блáго).

PREPOSITIONS

As the prepositions do not generally bear the stress, their spelling in Byelorussian makes them look different in some instances from the corresponding prepositions in other Slavonic languages, e.g. да, пад. Actually they are very similar to those in Russian, Ukrainian, and Polish, and generally govern the same cases. Compound prepositions are written with a hyphen.

With Gen.:—

без	= without	за́мэст	= instead of
для, дзеля́	= for, for the sake of	апрача́, апрэч	= except
да	= to, up to	з	= from; and off
ад	= from		(cf. Russ. с + Gen. and из)
у	= by, at	узды́ж	= along, down
з-за	= because of	насу́праць	= opposite, towards,
з-пад	= from under		against
ля	= by, near, round	акра́мй	= except
каля́	} = after	вако́л, вака́л	= round
пасля́		пава́дле	= according to
		сярэд	= among

With Dat.:—

па	= along, according to (with <i>sing.</i> only); also = ... each (distributive)
к	= to (less frequently used than да)
насу́перак	= despite, contrary to
па	= up to; for (to get)
пра	= about
праз	= through, because of
скрозь	= (penetrating) through
цэ́раз	= over, through; after, in (time)

With Acc.:—

за = (to) behind; for; than (in comparisons)
 пад = (to) under
 у = into
 на = on to
 аб = against
 з = about (of size, quantity)
 паўз = along, through, past

With Instr.:—

над = over перад, прад = before, in
 за = behind (rest) front of (rest)
 пад = under (rest) з = with
 між (паміж, паміж)¹ = among

With Loc.:—

пры = by, near на = on
 па = over, along, after, аб = about, concerning
 у = in

з (= "with" and "from") becomes за before a consonant group beginning with a sibilant, e.g.:—

са збонам = with a ringing

before other groups it becomes за, e.g.:—

за ўсіх = of all

у becomes ўва before difficult consonantal groups, e.g.:—

ўва ўсіх вёсках = in all the villages

while before vowels it is reduced to ў, e.g.:—

ў адной бярэзе = in one lair
 (or: у вадной бярэзе)

Many prepositions are used as prefixes with verbs and other words. (See "The Future Tense and the Aspects" in the "Conjugation of Verbs" below). The four prefixes уз- (= up), паз- (= apart), вы- (= out of), пера- (= over, through) are never used as prepositions. (Nor is the rarer prefix: cy- = with.)

The prefixes ending in з: з-, без-, уз-, паз- and пераз-, are spelt with a final с before the voiceless consonants к, п, т, х, с, ш, ц, ч, e.g.:—

згінуць = to perish

but— схадзіць = to go off; visit

¹Also with Gen.

Prefixes ending in a consonant change an initial *i* of the following root to *ы*: thus *з + ішлі* gives *зашлі* (= it came off); while prefixes ending in a vowel change such an initial *i* to *й*: thus *пры + ісці* becomes *прыйсці* (= to come).

The prefix *вы-* is always stressed with Perfective verbs.

Note also: *адыходзіць* = to go away. Cf. Russian *отходить*.

THE CONJUGATION OF VERBS

The verb in Byelorussian has the same number of tenses and moods in regular use as has the verb in Russian, though in Byelorussian dialects one meets with two newly formed compound tenses—a Pluperfect and a Future Perfect.

As in Russian too, there are really only two main categories of verbs, those with *e* as the characteristic (joining) vowel in the Present (or Perfective Future) and those with *i*. But owing to the phonetic spelling of the vowels in Byelorussian, both these categories are further subdivided into (*a*) finally stressed, and (*b*) non-finally stressed verbs. Furthermore those verbs in each of these four subdivisions which have their stem in a (hard) *p* (*r*) or a *chuintante*, have Present (or Pfive. Future) endings with the corresponding hard non-yotated vowels. There are thus eight main types of Present which, however, correspond to each other quite regularly.

In common with Russian, and in contrast to Ukrainian, West Slav, Slovenian and Serbo-Croatian, literary Byelorussian need not use a special form for the 1st person plural Imperative. Like Russian, it too has lost the Dual number, the Aorist and Imperfect tenses and the Supine.

The Passive voice is expressed either (*a*) by a reflexive verb¹ or (*b*) by the Past Participle Passive, with the verb "to be" expressed or implied; or (*c*) the sentence may be turned by making the passive subject

¹The reflexive verb has throughout the suffix *-ся* except in the Infinitive and in the 3rd persons sing. and plur. of the Present (or Pfive. Future) tense, where it fuses with the final *-ць* to give *-цца*, e.g.:— *мьюся* = I wash, *мьюцца* = you (sg.) wash, but *мьюцца* = he washes; *мьюмся* = we wash, *мьюцца* = you (pl.) wash, but *мьюцца* = they wash, and *мьюцца* (Infinitive). This *-цца* is reduced to *-ца* after another consonant, e.g.: *здыцца* (= he will surrender), from *здыццаць-ся*.

into the object of an Active verb, which may be governed by the (former) agent as the new subject, e.g.:

- (a) Дом будёўца майстрамі = the house is being built by the skilled workmen
 (b) Вакно разбіта кўляю = the window was smashed (lit. is having been smashed) by a bullet
 (c) Майстры будуюць дом = the skilled workmen are building the house.

In (a) and (b) the agent is always in the Instrumental case.

The Present of Imperfective Verbs and the Future of Perfective Verbs have the following personal endings:—

Sing.	1	-у or -ю
	2	-ш
	3	-ць or no ending
Plur.	1	-м
	2	-це
	3	-ць

These endings are joined to the stem by the joining vowel e or i (see above), except in the 1st person sing. and 3rd pers. pl. Here -y is used after a consonant and -ю after a vowel in -e- verbs,¹ while -ю is the rule for -i- verbs except for those with a stem ending in -p- or a *chuintante*. In the 3rd person plural -e- verbs have -уць or -юць according to the same rule, while -i- verbs have -яць unless their stem ends in a *chuintante* or p, when they have -аць.

In the 2nd pers. plur. finally stressed verbs stress the very last syllable -це, printed here *цѐ*, a peculiarity of Byelorussian. The preceding -e- becomes (quite regularly) -я-, or -а- after a *chuintante* or p. In the 2nd and 3rd pers. sing. -e- is preserved (after a *chuintante* or p, -э is used under stress and -а not under stress); in the 1st pers. plur. this e becomes *ѐ* when stressed (-о- after a *chuintante* or p): unstressed we have -e- in the 1st plur., but -а- after p or a *chuintante*. (The non-finally stressed (originally -e-) verbs with stems in a *chuintante* or p, have -а- instead of -e- or -ѐ- as the joining vowel.)

In the -i- verbs there are fewer variants. In both finally stressed and non-finally stressed types which have their stem in a *chuintante* or p, -i- is replaced by -ѝ-.

¹-ю is also used after (soft) consonants in Cl. III verbs with -je- "joining vowel".

Thus we have the following 8 types of Present or Perfective Future tenses:—

Category I: -e- verbs.

1. With finally stressed endings:—

		Stem in -p-
	няці = to carry	браць = to take
Sing.	1 нясу	бяру
	2 нясе ^ш	бярэ ^ш
	3 нясе	бярэ
Plur.	1 нясе ^м	бяром
	2 несяце	бераце
	3 нясуць	бяруць

2. With non-finally stressed endings:—

		Stem in -ж-
	думаць = to think	казаць = to say
Sing.	1 думаю	кажу
	2 думаеш	кажаш
	3 думае	кажа
Plur.	1 думаем	кажам
	2 думаеце	кажаце
	3 думаюць	кажуць

Category II: -i- verbs.

1. With finally stressed endings:—

		Stem in -ч-
	сядзець = to sit	маўчаць = to be silent
Sing.	1 сяджу ¹	маўчу
	2 сядзеш	маўчыш
	3 сядзіць	маўчыць
Plur.	1 сядзем	маўчым
	2 сядзіце	маўчыце
	3 сядзяць	маўчаць

¹The changes due to *ѝ* take place in the 1st pers. sing. only of -i- verbs.

2. With non-finally stressed endings (except in 1st pers. sing.):—

	паліць = to burn	Stem in -p-	гаварыць = to speak
Sing. 1	палю́	гавару́	
2	палі́ш	гаворы́ш	
3	палі́ць	гаворы́ць	
Plur. 1	палі́м	гаворы́м	
2	палі́це	гаворы́це	
3	палі́ць	гавора́ць	

It will already be evident that the Present endings of a Byelorussian verb are not dependent on the ending of the Infinitive which, as in other Slavonic languages, is less important for the classification of verbs.

It will be seen from the classification table below that -ць is by far the commonest termination for the *Infinitive* in Byelorussian. A few primary verbs (all of the -e- category), mostly with monosyllabic roots, have Infinitives in -ці or -ці́ (stressed), e.g.:—

ня́ці	= to carry
упа́ці	= to fall
гра́бці	= to rake, row (3rd p.s. грабе́)
це́рці	= to rub (3rd p.s. трэ́)

Most verbs with roots in velars, also belonging to Class I A.a. below and to the -e- category, have Infinitives in -чы, e.g.:—

ця́чы	= to flow,	Pres. цяку́, цячу́ш, etc.
пя́чы	= to bake,	" пяку́, пячу́ш, etc.
магчы́	= to be able,	" магу́, можа́ш, etc.
памагчы́	= to help,	" памагу́, паможа́ш, etc.
берагчы́	= to guard, keep	" берагу́, беража́ш, etc.
валачы́	= to drag	" валачу́, валача́ш, etc.
N.B. бегчы́	= to run, has	" бягу́, бяжа́ш, etc.,
	an -i- (ы)	3rd p. pl. бягу́ць

Classification of Byelorussian Verbs according to their Presents, with Subdivisions according to their Infinitives:—

For comparative and etymological purposes we give below a table of the verbs, classified according to the five main classes of Present endings originally existing in Old Slavonic, with subdivisions according to their Infinitives. It will be seen that the old

Classes I, II, and III have now all fused into one new category, as in Russian. The old Class V (the "athematic" verbs) has only two verbs left.

3rd pers. sg.
Present

Infinitive

I. A. a.	ня́се	ня́ці ¹	= to carry. Same stem in Pres. and Infin., consonantal stem.
b.	плыве́	плы́ць	= to float. Same stem in Pres. and Infin., originally a vowel stem.
B. a.	раве́	рау́ці	= to roar.
b.	бярэ́	бра́ць	= to take. Infin. in -аць, consonantal stem
	рве́	рва́ць	= to tear. Infin. in -аць, originally a vowel stem.
II.	су́не	су́нуць	= to move, poke (Pfive.) -н- stem.

III. Presents with -je.

1. Primary verbs.

A. a.	зна́е	зна́ць ²	= to know (Fr. connaître). Same stem in Pres. and Infin., vowel stem.
b.	ме́ле	мало́ць	= to grind. Same stem in Pres. and Infin., consonantal stem.
B. a.	та́е	та́яць	= to melt. Infin. in -яць, vowel stem.
b.	[арэ́ ка́жа	ара́ць каза́ць	= to plough] Infin. in -аць, consonantal stem.

2. Derived verbs. All vowel stems.

A. a.	ду́мае	ду́маць	= to think. a-stem.
b.	жаўце́е	жаўце́ць	= to grow (or show) yellow. Formerly -ж-, now -e- stem.

¹So also: пячэ́ пячы́ = to bake

памрэ́ памрэ́ці = to die (Pfive.)

пачне́ пача́ць = to begin (Pfive.)

чу́е чу́ць = to hear

п'е́ піць = to drink

3rd pers. sing. Present Infinitive

В.	буду́е	бу́даваць	= to build. -у- Pres. stem, -аваць Infinitive.
	хваля́е	хвалява́ць	= to disturb, stir. -ю- Pres. stem, -яваць Infinitive. (soft stem).
	падпі́свае	падпі́сваць	= to sign. -ва- Pres. stem, -ваць Infinitive. (hard stems).

IV. А.	хва́ліць	хваля́ць	} -i- through- out.
	па́ліць	палі́ць	
В.	ве́рціць	вярце́ць	= to turn. -і- in Pres., -е- from <i>к</i> in Infinitive.
	ляжа́ць	ляжа́ць	= to lie. -а- for <i>і</i> in Pres., -а- from <i>к</i> in Infinitive. after <i>chudin-tante</i> .

V. "Athematic" verbs, with -м- in 1st pers. sing. Pres., —only two:—

дам	(1st pers. sing.), даць (3rd pers. sing.), даць (Pfive.) = to give
ем	(1st pers. sing.), ець (3rd pers. sing.), ё́ці (Impfve.) = to eat

(For the full conjugation of these two verbs, see below under "Irregular Verbs".)

The Future Tense and the Aspects

The usual way of forming the Future of Imperfective verbs in Byelorussian is with the Future tense of быць (= to be), followed by the Infinitive, as in Russian, Czech, Slovak, and Lusatian. E.g.:—

Sing.	1	буду рабі́ць	= I shall do, etc.
	2	будзе́ш	"
	3	будзе	"
Plur.	1	будзе́м	"
	2	будзе́це	"
	3	буду́ць	"

Less commonly to be met with is the form of Imperfective Future composed of the Infinitive with the Pfive. Present of -няць (= to take), suffixed (cf. Ukrainian), viz.:—

Sing.	1	рабі́цьму
	2	рабі́цьмеш
	3	рабі́цьме
Plur.	1	рабі́цьмем
	2	рабі́цьмеце
	3	рабі́цьмуць

The Future of Perfective verbs has the form of a Present, corresponding to a Perfective Infinitive. (Perfective verbs have no Present tense.) It has the same endings as an Imperfective Present, but the form of the stem differs in some way from the Imperfective. As in other Slavonic languages, there are several alternative ways of differentiating the two aspects. Which one of these is used for a particular verb is just a matter of usage, which the student has to learn by observation. They are:—

1. By using a different form of the same root:—

пуска́ць	= to allow (Impfve.)	пу́сціць	(Pfive.)
		Fut.:	пу́сці, пу́сціць
сяда́ць	and	се́сці	(Pfive.)
сады́цца	= to sit down (Impfve.)	Fut.:	ся́ду, ся́дзеш
		(cf. сядзе́ць	= to sit, be sitting)

2. By using an Infinitive ending -нуць:—

дрыжа́ць	= to tremble (Impfve.)	дры́гнуць	= to give a shudder, to start (Pfive.)
		Fut.:	дры́гну
ківа́ць	= to nod	кі́ўнуць	(Pfive.)
		Fut.:	кі́ўну

3. By using a prepositional prefix:—

піса́ць	= to write (Impfve.)	напі́саць	(Pfive.)
		Fut.:	напі́шу
пра́сіць	= to ask, request (Impfve.)	папра́сіць	(Pfive.)
		Fut.:	папра́шу
раба́ць	= to do, work (Impfve.)	зраба́ць	(Pfive.)
		Fut.:	зраба́ць, зраба́іш

4. In some cases a totally different root is used:—

браць = to take (Impfve.) узяць (Pfvе.)
Fut.: вазьму́, вб'язьмеш

Occasionally the original verb is Perfective. The Imperfective aspect is then formed from it by changing the ending or extending the stem:—

купіць = to buy (Pfvе.) купляць (Impfve.)
Pres.: купляю

даць = to give (Pfvе.) даваць (Impfve.)
Pres.: даю́, даеш

Compound verbs, that is verbs with prefixes and Perfective because of these, can form further Imperfectives by this latter method of lengthening or extending the root, e.g.:—

падпісаць = to sign падпіс(ы)ваць (Impfve.)

Verbs of this type are more often contracted, losing the penultimate vowel, e.g.: падпісваць — a peculiarity of Byelorussian morphology. (Cf. Bulgarian.)

Other compound verbs merely change the Infinitive endings, e.g.:—

адмяніць = to cancel адмяняць (Impfve.)
адраджаць = to revive, адраджаць (Impfve.)
renew (Pfvе.)

The Future Perfect

This tense, in dialects only, is formed by the Future of быць—буду, etc., with the Past Gerund (see below), e.g.:—

я буду пайшоўшы = I shall have gone

This construction is a peculiarity of Byelorussian dialects.

The Past Tense

The Past tense of Byelorussian is characterized by л in the ending, as in other Slavonic languages. But this л (л) in the masculine singular (there are no personal endings in this tense. cf. Russian and Ukrainian) becomes ў according to the laws of Byelorussian phonetics. Thus we have the endings:—

-ў for the masc. sing.
-ла for the fem. sing.
-лб or -ла for the neut. sing.
-лі for the plural of all genders.

These endings are added to Infinitives of either aspect less their final -ць or -чы. The neuter ending -ла (unstressed) should be noted as peculiarly Byelorussian; it is due, of course, to the phonetic spelling of the vowels. Thus we have:—

я пісаў = I (masc.) was writing; я пісала = I (fem.) was writing

ты пісаў = you (masc.) were writing; ты пісала = you (fem.) were writing

ён пісаў = he was writing; яна пісала = she was writing

яно пісала = it (e.g. the child—дзіцянё) was writing

but—

яно ішло = (e.g. the child) was going
мы, вы, яна пісали = we, you, they were writing (for all genders)

As in the other East Slav languages, owing to the absence of personal endings, the Personal Pronouns are required to indicate the person or, in the third person, a noun as subject shows the gender.

Verbs with stems in с, з, к, г, б, р have no -ў in the masc. sing., just as in the other East Slav languages they have no л, e.g.:—

ён не́с = he was carrying, from нясу́ = to carry, Pres. 1st p. s. нясу́

but—

яна не́сла = she was carrying
яна не́сли = they were carrying

Similarly—

ён трэ́ся = he was shaking (intrans.),
from трэ́ціся

ён грыз = he was gnawing, from грызці

ён знік = he disappeared, from знікнуць

ён мог = he was able, from магчы

ён аслаб = he grew weak, from аслабнуць

ён памёр = he died, from памёрці

It will be observed that some verbs in -нуць lose the syllable -ну- in the Past tense.

Verbs of Class I with roots in the dentals T and D lost these consonants before the endings of the Past tense, as in other East and South Slav languages, e.g.:—

вёсці = to lead, Pres. вяду́, Past вёў, вяла́, etc.
 упа́сці = to fall (Pfive.), Fut. упаду́, Past упаў, упала́, etc.
 мэ́сці = to sweep, Pres. мяту́, Past меў, мяла́, etc.
 ісці́ = to go, Pres. іду́, Past ішоў, ішла́, etc.
 from *імьдль

Verbs of Class I with roots in K restore this K in the Past tense, e.g.:—

пячы́ = to bake Pres. пяху́ Past пёк, пяхла́, etc.

The Pluperfect Tense

This is formed in dialects, with the Past tense of быць and the Past Gerund (see below), e.g.:—

я быў зрабіўшы = I had done
 яна́ была́ пайшоўшы = she had gone

This construction, like that of the Future Perfect, is peculiar to Byelorussian *dialects* only.

The Conditional

The Conditional is formed by using the invariable auxiliary бы or б with the Past tense of either aspect. б(ы) is separable and can follow the verb or other words in the clause. When каб (= that, if) is used, a further б is not required, e.g.:—

Не было́ бы тут пастуха́, ваўкі перадушлі́
 б авёчак. = Had there not been a shepherd here, the wolves would have killed the sheep.

Не зыч ліха друго́му, каб не давяло́ся само́му.
 = Do not wish ill to another, that it should not happen to yourself.

Мы б мо' і не крыўлялі, каб павядоў і пуг не зна́лі. = We perhaps would not go crooked, if we did not know the reins and the whip.

The Imperative

This mood is characterized by special endings for the 2nd pers. sing. and the 2nd pers. plur. For the 3rd pers. sing. and plur. няхай or хай + Present of either aspect is used, corresponding to the English construction with "let". For the 1st pers. plur. the form of the Present (or Perfective Future) may be used with or without дава́й(це) for Perfective verbs.

The endings for the Imperative forms, which are added to the Present stem as seen in the 2nd pers. sing., are:—

A. a. For verbs of both the -e- and the -i- categories with stem ending in a single consonant, if the ending is stressed (the stress is taken from the 1st pers. sing. Present, but the stem from the 2nd pers. sing. Pres.):—

2nd pers. sg. -і e.g. нясі́! = carry! ступі́! = step!
 кажа́! = say!

1st pers. pl. -ем/ём/ім or -ём, -ём¹
 e.g. нясе́м!
 ступі́м!¹

2nd pers. pl. -іце нясі́це!
 = let us carry! = let us step!
 ступі́це!
 = step!

3rd pers. sg. (ня)хай нясе́
 = let him carry! (ня)хай ступі́ць

3rd pers. pl. (ня)хай нясу́ць
 = let them carry! (ня)хай ступі́ць

After р or *shintante* or a velar (which undergoes the 1st Palatalization, in contrast to Old Slavonic, Serbo-cr., Slovenian and Czech), these endings become: -і, -ём or -ём, -іце, e.g.:—

бярэ́! = take!, бяро́м! or бяро́м!, бяры́це!
 памажа́! = help!(Pfive.), памажа́м! or памажа́м!, памажа́це!
 пяха́! = bake!, пяха́м!, пяха́це!

A. b. If the stem and not the ending is stressed, the endings for both categories of verbs are:— -ь, -ем/-ім, -ьце, e.g.:—

кінь! = throw!, кінем!, кіньце!
 не траць! = do not lose!

After a group of consonants, the endings -і, -ем, -іце are used unstressed, e.g.:—

сві́снi! = (give a) whistle! сві́снем!, сві́сніце!

¹Or the endings: stressed -ём (-ём): e.g. ступі́м!, кажа́м!.

After a *chuintante* or a labial, the *ь* is lost, so that in the 2nd pers. sing. there is no ending, e.g.:—

саромся! = be ashamed!

прамбў! = speak! make a speech!

лэгчы = to lie down (Pfive.), also has лаж!, ляжам!, ляжце!

B. For verbs with stem ending in a vowel, the endings are: -й, -ем/-им, -йце, e.g.:—

пауя = listen!, паўем!, паўйце!

The -й of the 2nd pers. sing. is lost after an -i, so we have:— ли! = pour!; пи! = drink!; би = beat!; ви! = weave!.

*The endings -йма (or -ма for consonant stem verbs) for the 1st pers. pl. were described as dialectal in the authoritative Academy Grammar of 1962.

The Gerunds

The *Present Gerund* (Active) is formed from the 3rd pers. plur. of the Present (of Imperfective verbs) by substituting -чы for the final -ць. Thus:—

бярўць	= they take	— беручы	= taking	}
думваюць	= they think	— думваючы	= thinking	
and—				
гавораць	= they talk	— гаворачы	= talking	}
стаць	= they stand	— стаячы	= standing	
			(with shift of stress)	gory

As in Russian and Ukrainian, this form is a verbal adverb and can refer only to the subject of the sentence. It is indeclinable and invariable as to gender. It indicates an action simultaneous to that of the main verb, which can be in any tense. E.g.:—

ён гавараў стаячы = he spoke standing

The *Past Gerund* (Active) is formed by adding -шы to the masc. sing. of the Past tense of either aspect,¹ e.g.:—

ён нес = he was carrying—несшы = having carried (Impfve.)

ён чытаў = he was reading —прачытаўшы" read (Pfive.)

ён зрабіў = he did —зрабіўшы " done (Pfive.)

¹Imperfective Past Gerunds are rarer and confined to the literary language.

It likewise can only refer to the subject and indicates an action, continuous (Impfve.) or single and complete (Pfive.), preceding that of the main verb. E.g.:—

чытаўшы такія навіны ўвесь год, я страціў надзею. = Having read such news for a whole year, I lost hope.

Зрабіўшы гэтае, ён вярнуўся = Having done this, he went out.

or—
Зрабіўшы гэтае, я знаю... = Having done this, I know....

The Participles

These, on the other hand, are verbal adjectives, varying in gender and declinable; they can qualify any noun in a sentence.

The *Present Participle Active* is not often used. In the Nom. sing. masc. it is identical in form with the Pres. Gerund (q.v.) though sometimes a final *ь* used to be added. In the other genders, numbers and cases it is declined exactly like a hard adjective. It is formed only from Imperfective verbs, e.g.:—

SING. Masc.

Nom. чытаючы(я) = who is reading чытаючая чытаючае

Gen. чытаючага reading чытаючае чытаючага

Dat. чытаючаму

etc.

Fem.

Neut.

The *Past Participle Active*, likewise not much used, can similarly be identical in form with the Past Gerund (q.v.) in the Nom. sing. masc., or it could have the -й added. It also is declined in the other cases and genders and in the plural like a hard adjective, e.g.:—

чытаўшы(я) = who has read, masc., чытаўшая fem., чытаўшае neut.

A few intransitive verbs have adjectival Past Participles Active in -л- formed from the Infinitive root, e.g.: мінуць (= to pass)—мінўлы (masc.), мінўлая (fem.), мінўлае (neut.), declined like a hard adjective, = past.

The *Present Participle Passive*, formed from Imperfective transitive verbs and characterized by the suffixes -ем- for *e* verbs and -ім- for *i* verbs, added to the Present stem, followed by the hard adjectival endings, occurs mostly in learned publications and

in journals and newspapers: e.g. стварáемы = (being) formed, кірúемы = (being) led.

The *Past Participle Passive*.

This is characterized by either -н- or -т- before the adjectival termination. As in other Slavic languages, -н- is the more general ending, but there are no absolute rules as to when -т- is used. For verbs whose Infinitive stem ends in a consonant, -е- is inserted before the final -ны, and in verbs of the -і- category the preceding consonant undergoes the change due to the *j* element, (yotation), e.g.:—

Past Partic. Passive

чытáць = to read	чытáны, -ая, -ае = read
купляць = to buy	купляны = bought
(Impfve.)	
нёсці = to carry	нёсены = carried
пячы = to bake	пячоны = baked
(Pres. пячэ)	
зрабіць = to do	зрблены = done
(Pfv.)	
but—	
біць = to beat	біты = beaten

This participle is formed from the infinitive stem of transitive verbs of either aspect, though perfective forms are more common.

This participle is used with the verb быць (= to be), to express the Passive Voice (see above). It can also be used as an attributive adjective and is then declined like a *hard* adjective.

Verbal Nouns are formed from the Past Partic. Passive and end in -анне or -енне (-энне), e.g.:—

пытáць = to ask	—	пытáнне = question
карміць = to feed	—	кармлэнне = feeding
здáрыцца = to happen	—	здарэ́нне = event

Examples of the Two Conjugations of Regular Verbs
1. -е- category (Classes I, II, and III).

Class I нёсці Class III¹ думаць
= to carry (Impfve.) = to think (Impfve.)

PRESENT		
Sing.1	нясу́	думаю́
2	нясе́ш	думае́ш
3	нясе́	думае́
Plur.1	нясе́м	думае́м
2	неся́це	думае́це
3	нясу́ць	думаю́ць

IMPERATIVE

Sing.2	няси́!	думай
Plur.1	нясе́м	думае́м
2	няси́це	дума́йце

GERUNDS

Present	несу́чы	думаю́чы
Past	нёсшы	дума́ўшы

PARTICIPLES

Pres. Active	несу́чы(й)	думаю́чы(й)
Past Active	нёсшы(й)	дума́ўшы(й)
Past Passive	нёсены	(чытáны= read)

PAST TENSE

Sing.	нёс, нёсла,	думаў, дума́ла,
	нёсла	дума́ла (п.!)
Plur.	нёсли	думалі

¹Verbs of Class III with stems ending in a consonant undergo the changes due to the presence of *j* (yotation) in *all* persons of the Present, e.g.: писа́ць = to write, Pres.: пи́шу, пи́шам, пи́ша, пи́шам, пи́шаце, пи́шучы, or каза́ць = to say, Pres.: кажу́, etc. (See above under "Present of Imperfective verbs", p. 228-229, on endings used.)

2. -i- category (Class IV)

(Stems in p or a
chuintante)

хваліць = to praise гаварыць = to speak

PRESENT

Sing. 1 хвалі́ў¹
2 хва́ліш
3 хва́ліцьPlur. 1 хва́лі́м
2 хва́лі́це
3 хва́ляць

IMPERATIVE

Sing. 2 хвалі́
Plur. 1 хва́лі́м
2 хва́лі́це

GERUNDS

Present хва́лячы
Past хвалі́ўшы

PARTICIPLES

Present Active хва́лячы(і)
Past Active хвалі́ўшы(і)
Past Passive хва́лены

PAST TENSE

Sing. хвалі́ў, хвалі́ла, гавары́ў, гавары́ла,
хвалі́ўша, гавары́ла
Plur. хвалі́лі, гавары́лі¹Before the -ю of the 1st Pers. sing. *опіў*, the influence of the *j* causes the changes of consonants due to yotation (described in "Slavonic Characteristics", No. 4). Hence we have:—сядзе́ць = to sit, but сяджу́
любі́ць = to love, but люблю́
пусці́ць = to allow, but пушчу́
ляце́ць = to fly, but лячу́, etc.

Irregular Verbs

Class V (the "athematic" verbs)

быць = to be даць = to give (Pfvе.) ёсці = to eat (Impfvе.)

PRESENT

Sing. 1 ёсць
2 ёсць
3 ёсцьPlur. 1 ёсць
2 ёсць
3 ёсць

FUTURE

Sing. 1 буду́
2 будзеш
3 будзеPlur. 1 будзем
2 будзеце
3 будуць

IMPERATIVE

Sing. 2 быва́й²
Plur. 1 будзем
2 быва́йце

GERUNDS

Present буду́чы
Past баву́шы

PARTICIPLES

Pres. Act. буду́чы(і)
Past Act. баву́шы(і)
Past Pass. да́ны,
(забыты = forgotten) дадзены

PAST TENSE

Sing. быў, была́, даў, дала́, еў, ела, ела
было́, дало́
Plur. былі́, да́лі, е́ліем
ясі
есць
ядзі́м (ямó)
ясце́
яду́ць(буду́, ёсці́,
etc.)дам
дасі́
дасцьдадзі́м (дамó)
дасце́
даду́цьдай
дадзі́м
да́йцедаўшы
да́ўшыядучы(і)
ёўчы(і)
з'ёдзеныеў, ела, ела
дало́
да́лі¹Note: "there is (are) not (no) = няма́ (ш), or even
няма́шака + Gen.
²3rd sing. and plur. няха́й будзе́, буду́ць.

Other irregular and noteworthy Verbs

"To know" is expressed by ве́даць (= to know a fact) — Pres. ве́даю (quite regular, -e- category, Class III) — and by знаць (= to know by sight, etc., a person or thing) — Pres. зна́ю (also a quite regular -e- verb, Class III).

хаце́ць = to want, has a Present of the -e- type with the -e- spelt *a* after the *chuintante* ч:—

Sing. 1	хачу́	Plur. 1	хбчам
2	хбчаш	2	хбчаце
3	хбча	3	хбчуць

The other forms are regular, e.g.:—

Pres. Gerund: хбчучы
Past Tense: хаце́ў

мець = to have, has a Present: ма́ю, ма́еш, etc., маю́ць, Past меў and Imperative: мей.

магчы́ = to be able, has a regular -e- Present with the 1st Palatalization: магу́, мо́жаш, etc., мо́гуць. Past: мог, fem. магла́, etc.

бе́гчы = to run, has an -i- Present with an irregular 1st pers. sing. and 3rd pers. plur.: бягу́, бяжы́ш, etc., бягу́ць.

ссаць = to suck, has Present: ссу, ссеш, etc., ссуць.

пець = to sing, is conjugated regularly in the -e- category (Class III, 1.A.a.), Present: пяю́, пяеш, etc., пяю́ць; Past: пеў, пела́, etc.

дзьмуць = to blow, has alternative Presents: дую́, and дзьму.

Monosyllabic Infinitives in -ыць such as мыць (= to wash), have Present like: мыю́, мыеш, etc., мыю́ць.

віць = to weave, has Present: ую́, уеш, уе́, уём, уяце́, ую́ць.

-яць, -няць (Pfve.), -імаць and браць (Impfve.) are all Infinitives meaning "to take". The corresponding Presents are: (Pfve.) Future -яму, ймеш, etc., and (Impfve.) бяру́, бярэ́ш, etc., with Pastс -няў, and браў. Pfve. also узяць, Future: вазьму́, вазьмеш, etc. Notice: прыма́ць, прыма́ю = to accept, Pfve. прыня́ць, пры(й)му́.

стаяць = to stand, is a regular -i- category verb except in the Infinitive. It has alternative forms in the Imperative: стой! and стай!

спаць = to sleep, is also a regular -i- verb except in the Infinitive. Present: сплю́, спіш, etc., спяць.

не́льга means "one cannot" and нямо́жна means "one must not", and correspond to Russian нельзя́ and Polish: nie móżna. (They are invariable.)

Verbs of Going and Conveying

These are essentially the same as in Russian and Ukrainian, with some variations of stress and, of course, with variations due to the phonetic spelling of vowels in Byelorussian.

To go (on foot):

Impfve.: іцу́і	Pfve.: пайсці́
Pres.: іду́, ідзёш	Fut.: пайдú, пойдзеш
Past: ішбу́, ішла́	пайшбу́, пайшла́
Imper.: ідзі́, ідзём,	пайдзі́, пайдзіце
ідзіце	

Freq.: хадзіць

Pres.: хаджу́, хбдзіш
Past: хадзіў, хадзіла
Imper.: хадзі́, хадзіце

To go (be conveyed):

Impfve.: ёхаць	Pfve.: паёхаць
Pres.: ёду́, ёдзеш	Fut.: паёду́, паёдзеш
Past: ёхаў, ёхала	паёхаў, паёхала
Imper.: едзь	паёдзь

Freq.: ёздзіць

Pres.: ёзджу́, ёздзіш
Past: ёздзіў, ёздзіла
Imper.: —

To come (on foot):

Impfve. and Freq.: прыхбдзіць	Pfve.: прыйсці́
Pres.: прыхаджу́, прыхбдзіш	Fut.: прыйду́, прыйдзеш
Past: прыхадзіў, прыхадзіла	прыйшбу́, прыйшла́
(also прыхбдзіў)	
Imper.: прыхбдзь, прыхбдзіце	прыйдзі́, прыйдзіце

To come (be conveyed):

Impfve. and
Freq.: прыезджаць

Pres.: прыезджаю, прыезджаеш Fut.: прыеду, прыедзеш
Past: прыезджаў, прыезджала прыехаў, прыехала
Imper.: прыезджай прыедзь

Similarly:—to go away (on foot) = адыходзіць, адысці
to go away (conveyed) = ад'язджаць, ад'ехаць
to go out (on foot) = выходзіць, выйсці—
Past: вайшаў
to go out (conveyed) = выязджаць, в'ехаць

On the same scheme:—

To carry:

Impfve.: несіці Freq.: панэсіці
Pres.: нясу, нясеш Fut.: панясу, панясеш
Past: неў, неўла панёс, панёсла
Imper.: нясі, нясіце панясі, панясіце

Freq.: насіць

Pres.: нашу, нбсіш
Past: насіў, насіла
Imper.: насі, насіце

To bring:

Impfve. and Freq.: прыносіць Freq.: прынесці
Pres.: прыношу, прыносіш Fut.: прынесу,
прынесеш

To lead:

Impfve.: вэдці Freq.: павэдціці
Pres.: вяду, вядзеш Fut.: павяду, павядзеш
Past: вёў, вяла павёў, павяла
Imper.: вядзі, вядзіце павядзі, павядзіце

Freq.: вадзіць

Pres.: ваджу, вбдзіш
Past: вадзіў, вадзіла
Imper.: вадзі, вадзіце

To bring (a person):

Impfve. and Freq.: прыводзіць Freq.: прывесці
Pres.: прыводжу, прыводзіш Fut.: прывяду,
прывядзеш

To convey:

Impfve.: вэзці Freq.: павэзці
Pres.: вязу, вязеш Fut.: павязу, павязеш
Past: вёз, вэзла павёз, павэзла
Imper.: вязі, вязіце павязі, павязіце

Freq.: вазіць

Pres.: важу, вбзіш
Past: вазіў, вазіла
Imper.: вазі, вазіце

To bring (in a vehicle):

Impfve. and Freq.: прывбзіць Freq.: прывэзці
Pres.: прывбжу, прывбзіш Fut.: прывязу,
прывязеш
Past: прывёз,
прывэзла

TEXTS

I.

Паводле Лукі, VIII

5. выйшаў сейбіт сеяць семя свае; і калі ён
сеяў, іншае ўпала пры дарозе і было патаптана і птушкі
нябесныя паклявалі яго;
6. а іншае ўпала на камень і, узыйшоўшы, засохла,
бо не мела вільгаці;
7. а іншае ўпала між цярнінаю, і вырасла цярніна
і заглушыла яго;
8. а іншае ўпала на добрую зямлю і, узыйшоўшы,
прынясло плод стакротны. Скажаўшы гэтае, клікнуў:
хто мае вушы слухаць, няхай слухае.

II.

Якуб Колас

НАШ РОДНЫ КРАЙ

Край наш бедны, край наш родны!
Лес, балота ды пясок...
чуць дзе крыху луг прыгодны...
Хвойнік, мох ды верасок.

А туманы, як пялёнка!
Засцілаюць лес і гай.
Ой, ты, бедная старонка!
Ой, забыты богам край!

Наша поле кепска родзіць,
Бедна тут жыве народ,
У гразі жыве ён, ходзіць,
А працуе—львецца пот.

Пазіраюць сумна вёскі,
Глянеш—сэрца забалідзь.
На дварэ—паленне, цёскі,
Куча сметніку ляжыць.

Крыж збучцелы пры дарозе,
Кучка топалю сухіх...
Сцішна, нудна, бы ў астрозе
Ці на могільках якіх.

А як песня панясецца—
Колькі ў песні той нуды!
Уцякаў—бы, бег, здаецца,
Сам не ведаеш куды.

Край наш родны, бедна поле!
Ты глядзіш, як сірата,
Сумны ты, як наша доля,
Як ты, наша цемната.

III.

Якуб Колас

НАШЫ ДНІ

Праімчаўся віхор, пыл і затхласць размёў.
Сцяг чырвоны разняўшы ўгары...
Вы, таварышы, вы ўладары
Гэтых фабрык, заводаў і вольных палёў.
Зарунела ралля,

Твар мяняе зямля,
Новы засеў вянкi перамогі заплёў.
У нябыт адходзіць закладце вякоў,
Гэты здзек, гэты жах кабалы,
Гэта цемра папоўскай імглы,
Гэта тхлань і насланне ліхіх ведзьмакоў—
Запалілі агні

Большэвіцкія дні
І спалілі нацэнт звон іржавых акоў.
Не пазнаеш зямлі і вясковых людзей—
Не, не тыя, не тыя яны!
Іным клопатам людзі паўны:

Крута іх павярнуў большэвік-чарадзей.
Новы гоман наўсцяж,
Замест "мой" громка "наш"
Вылятае з калгасных здаровых грудзей.
Знята ўлада зямлі, векавечны прыгон,
Што пракляццем лажыўся на нас,

Бляск Фальшывы навекі пагас...
Я вітаю вялікі шырокі разгон
Нашых дзён маладых,
Гоман творчасці іх...
Дык ярчэй-жа гары, сонца радасных дзён!

IV.

Пімен Панчэнка

ЯБЛЫНЯ

Стаяла яблыня ля вёскі,
Як падарожнік між дарог.
Вясною падалі пялёсткі
нібы сняжынкi, на муроґ.

Ніхто не дбаў аб ёй, і вецер
хацеў галіны пакрышыць.
А побач—помнік нейчай смерці—
гнілі два сумныя крыжы.

Як сірата расла... І кожны
пахучым кветкам крыўду нёс.
І ціха скардзілася ложкам
яна пра свой паганы лёс.

Ды кожны год аздобай новай
здзіўляла птушак і людзей...

А гэтай сонечнай вясною
такі выдатны выпаў дзень:

Мы перавезлі беражліва
Яе у сад, кагласны сад,
дзе на ігрушах і на слівах
цвіце блакітная раса...

—Расці!—сказалі ёй з пашанай,
—Гадуй нам сочныя плады.
—Расці!—загрукаў гром, і хмара
паслала дожджык малады.

І ападаў на сад са звонам
бліскучых, буйных, кропель рой...
А з поўдня ехаў май зялёны
да нас з вясёлкавай дуґой...

V.
Алесь Звонак

—Песня—

Тры гудкі...
 Пара адчаліваць...
 Смаліць дым
 Праз дзве трубы...
 Выйдзі, любая, на палубу,—
 Штосьці ў сэрцы шмат журбы...
 Выйдзі, любая, на палубу,
 Белай хустачкай махні,—
 Нам з табою не пабачыцца
 Да наступнае вясны...
 Сумны я
 Стаю на прыстані,
 Зіркі задымлены тугой...
 Не чакаў такое ростані
 Я з каханая табой,—
 Ты плывеш
 На поўдзень сонечны,—
 Шлях вядзе на поўнач мой...
 У Батуме кіпарысавым,
 Калі сэрца сум кране,
 Ўспомні любага далёкага,
 Адзінокага мяне...
 Я таксама
 Ўспомню любую
 І далёкую сваю.
 Да вясны наступнай сонечнай
 У сэрцы памяць затаю..
 І не раз
 У вечар восеньскі,
 У сцюжу снежаньскіх завей
 Думка—лебедзь белакрылая
 У чорнамор'е паплыве,
 Дзе ў Батуме кіпарысавым
 Мая любая жыве...
 Тры гудкі...
 Пара адчаліваць...
 Смаліць дым
 Праз дзве трубы...
 Выйдзі, любая, на палубу,—
 Штосьці ў сэрцы шмат журбы...

Выйдзі, любая, на палубу,
 Белай хустачкай махні,—
 Нам з табою не пабачыцца
 Да наступнае вясны.

VI. (Folktale—казка.)

ЗАЛОМКА

У нашай вёсцы жыў адзін вядзьмар. Яго зналі не толькі ў суседніх сёлах, але мо'ў цэлай акрузе. Гэта быў такі вялікі вядзьмар, што ён усё ведаў. Ніхто не смеў яму сказаць наперакор, так яго баяліся.
 Толькі быў там адзін чалавек; ён многа па свету хадзіў: кажуць быў аж у Кралёўцы. От гэты чалавек не баяўся вядзьмара і ўсё казаў, што вядзьмар толькі чмуціць. Але яму не верылі.
 От той чалавек пайшоў у сваё жыта і зрабіў там заламку.
 Праз трыдзень, а мо' і два, прыходзіць да таго вядзьмара і просіць, каб ён вырваў тую заламку.
 Пайшлі яны ў поле.
 Падышоў вядзьмар к заламцы на крокаў дваццаць ды і кажа, што не можа ісці далей, гэткая моцная заламка. Скінуў гэта вядзьмар нагавіцы і сарочку, ды так, як маці радзіла, папоўз да заламкі ракам. Паўзе і ўсё стогне, што вельмі моцна ўздзеяна.
 Маўчаў, гэта маўчаў той чалавек, а як падшлі другія людзі, сеў на вядзьмара вярхом, дастаў з-пад палы гарапнік ды давай паласаваць вядзьмара.
 —Вось-жа,—кажа,—я табе пакажу, як моцна ўздзеяна, бо гэтую заламку я зрабіў сам.
 Рава немаў голасам вядзьмар, а той яго лупіць.
 Біў, біў пакуль здаволіўся ды і пытае: а што, не будзеш больш добрых людзей чмуціць?
 —Не буду,—просіцца вядзьмар,—толькі пусці жывога.
 Пусціў той чалавек вядзьмара. Усхапіўся гад, забіў і сарочку і нагавіцы апрагнуць, ды так і сунуў найцекача.
 Падзівіліся людзі, думалі перш, што вядзьмар таго чалавека са свету зжыве, але бачаць, што той чалавек жыве сабе і не ляс.
 Годзе вядзьмар з тае пары чмуціць.
 Дык вось якія вядзьмары.

VII.
Міхась Лынькоў

ІРЫНА

Як шчасліва, сонечна, адцвілі гэтыя апошнія гады. Пяць год таму назад, як сымліся яны, пажаніліся. Нават і не заўважыла Ірынка, як адцяцела бесклапотнае дзявоцтва, з песнямі, з пагулянкамі, з познімі карагодамі. З лёгкімі і мінулымі дзявоцымі крыўдамі. З вясновымі світанкамі, калі пахучы і празрысты бярозавы клейкі ліст, калі росы на золаку бываюць кусачымі, і ў кожным кусту столькі песень, што заслухаешся іх і забудзеш, а колькі-ж раз цябе пацалуе... Яны паставілі маленькі, чысценькі домік пад старай ліпай. Пасадзілі нескалькі яблынь, вішань. Пад вокнамі цэлыя кветнікі. Былі то Ірынкіны клопаты, каб весела было маленькаму Васільку. Ён так любіў краскі і пчол, матылёў, гудучых майскіх хрушчоў, залятаўшых у зялёны палісаднік. Па ранейшаму пела песні Ірына, і яшчэ дзружней гарэла праца ў яе руках, рукаў калгаснай ільनावодкі. Яна была ўсё той-жа рэзвай кляпатунняй і магла паспрачацца з любой дзяўчынай у калгасе: і ў песні, і ў дасціпным жарце, і на любой працы. Таму вось па нядзелях заўсёды заліваўся гармонік у іх пад акном, шумела гаманлівая моладзь, гулка гудзела ўтаптаная зямля — хлопцы і дзяўчаты скакалі кадрылі, кружыліся ў ляво-нісе, у бясконцых крыжачках і польках.

Харошы быў гарманіст Ігнась — муж Ірынкі, майстар на працу і на веселосць.

Усё гэта скончылася, абарвалася, як радасны сон. Ігнась пайшоў разам з другімі на вайну. Развітаўся, узяў на рукі чатырохгадовага Васілька, расцалаваў яго і, углядаючыся ў сінія і пранозлівыя, як цвет ільняны, васільковыя вачаняты, сказаў, папрасіў:

— Захавай яго... Які-ж ён асілак у нас... во... Адзін вот толькі... Ну, што-ж...

Спяшаючы, пацалаваў абодвух, пайшоў. Дзе ён цяпер?

VIII.
Янка Купала

А ХТО ТАМ ІДЗЕ?

А хто там ідзе, а хто там ідзе
У агромністай такой грамадзе?
— Беларусь.

А што яны нясуць на худых плячах,
На руках у крыві, на нагах у лапцях?
— Сваю крыўду.

А куды нясуць гэту крыўду ўсю,
А куды-ж нясуць на паказ сваю?
— На свет цэлы.

А хто гэта іх, не адзін мільён,
Крыўду несць наўчый, разбудзіў іх сон?
— Бяда, гора.

А чаго-ж, чаго захацелася ім,
Пагарджаным век, ім, сляпым, глухім?
— Людзямі звацца.

IX.
Янка Купала

ЗАКЛЯТАЯ КВЕТКА

Чуць толькі купальскае свята
Набліжыцца з ночкай сваёй,
Як папараць кветкай заклятай
Чаруе няшчасных людзей...

З надзеяй, і верай, і сілай
Зусоль, куды-б дзе ні зірнуць,
Праз высі, даліны, магілы,
Па кветку бягуць і бягуць!

...Сава пье песню разлукі,
Лапоча крыламі кажан,—
Мільённыя цягнуцца рукі,
Дзе дрэмле купальскі курган.

Тых радасцю вочы смяюцца,
Тым зрэнкі крывёй заліло,
Піхаюцца, корчацца, б'юцца,
Мяшаецца праўда і зло.

Пачнуцца галінкі хіліцца,
Шасцяць верасы пад нагой.
Туж-туж ужо кветку схапіці!
Сціскаецца гэты і той,—

Тыц—стой!... Глядзяць зорніцы сведкі,
Пявун адгукнуўся ў сяле—
Ні ночкі купальскай, ні кветкі!
Усё затаілася ў мгле...

Залыпалі блудныя вочы,
 Мільёны уздохаў ляціць.
 Сава не заціхне—рагоча,
 Крыламі кажан шапаціць....
 След костачкі сцелоце—услалі,
 Злаешца, ўжо час аддыхнуць,
 Надойдзе-ж хай толькі купалле,—
 Мільёны па кветку бягуць.

OTHER BOOKS FROM SLAVICA PUBLISHERS

- Andrej Kodjak: *Pushkin's I. P. Belkin, 1979.*
 Demetrius J. Koubourlis, ed.: *Topics in Slavic Phonology, 1974.*
 Michael K. Launer: *Elementary Russian Syntax, 1974.*
 Jules F. Levin & others: *Reading Modern Russian, 1979.*
 Maurice I. Levin: *Russian Declension and Conjugation: A Structural Description with Exercises, 1978.*
 Alexander Lipson: *A Russian Course, 1977.*
 Thomas F. Magner, ed.: *Slavic Linguistics and Language Teaching, 1976.*
 Mateja Matejić & Dragan Milivojević: *An Anthology of Medieval Serbian Literature in English, 1978.*
 Vasa D. Mihailovich and Mateja Matejić: *Yugoslav Literature in English A Bibliography of Translations and Criticism (1821-1975), 1976.*
 Alexander D. Nakhimovsky and Richard L. Leed: *Advanced Russian, 1980.*
 Felix J. Oinas, ed. *Folklore Nationalism & Politics.*
 Hongor Oulanoff: *The Prose Fiction of V. A. Kaverin.*
 Jan L. Perkowski: *Vampires of the Slavs, 1976.*
 Lester A. Rice: *Hungarian Morphological Irregularities, 1970.*
 Midhat Ridjanović: *A Synchronic Study of Verbal Aspects in English and Serbo-Croatian, 1976.*
 David F. Robinson: *Lithuanian Reverse Dictionary, 1976*
 Don K. Rowney & G. Edward Orchard, eds.: *Russian and Slavic History, 1977.*
 Ernest A. Scatton: *Bulgarian Phonology, 1975.*
 William R. Schmalstieg: *Introduction to Old Church Slavic, 1976.*
 Michael Shapiro: *Aspects of Russian Morphology A Semiotic Investigation, 1969.*
 Rudolph M. Susel, ed.: *Papers in Slovene Studies, 1977*
 Charles E. Townsend: *Russian Word-Formation, corrected reprint, 1975.*
 Charles E. Townsend: *The Memoirs of Princess Natal'ja Borisovna Dolgorukaja, 1977.*
 Daniel C. Waugh: *The Great Turkes Defiance On the History of the Apocryphal Correspondence of the Ottoman Sultan in its Muscovite and Russian Variants, 1978.*
 Susan Wobst: *Russian Readings & Grammar Terminology, 1978.*
 Dean S. Worth: *A Bibliography of Russian Word-Formation, 1977.*